



This is a digital copy of a book that was preserved for generations on library shelves before it was carefully scanned by Google as part of a project to make the world's books discoverable online.

It has survived long enough for the copyright to expire and the book to enter the public domain. A public domain book is one that was never subject to copyright or whose legal copyright term has expired. Whether a book is in the public domain may vary country to country. Public domain books are our gateways to the past, representing a wealth of history, culture and knowledge that's often difficult to discover.

Marks, notations and other marginalia present in the original volume will appear in this file - a reminder of this book's long journey from the publisher to a library and finally to you.

### Usage guidelines

Google is proud to partner with libraries to digitize public domain materials and make them widely accessible. Public domain books belong to the public and we are merely their custodians. Nevertheless, this work is expensive, so in order to keep providing this resource, we have taken steps to prevent abuse by commercial parties, including placing technical restrictions on automated querying.

We also ask that you:

- + *Make non-commercial use of the files* We designed Google Book Search for use by individuals, and we request that you use these files for personal, non-commercial purposes.
- + *Refrain from automated querying* Do not send automated queries of any sort to Google's system: If you are conducting research on machine translation, optical character recognition or other areas where access to a large amount of text is helpful, please contact us. We encourage the use of public domain materials for these purposes and may be able to help.
- + *Maintain attribution* The Google "watermark" you see on each file is essential for informing people about this project and helping them find additional materials through Google Book Search. Please do not remove it.
- + *Keep it legal* Whatever your use, remember that you are responsible for ensuring that what you are doing is legal. Do not assume that just because we believe a book is in the public domain for users in the United States, that the work is also in the public domain for users in other countries. Whether a book is still in copyright varies from country to country, and we can't offer guidance on whether any specific use of any specific book is allowed. Please do not assume that a book's appearance in Google Book Search means it can be used in any manner anywhere in the world. Copyright infringement liability can be quite severe.

### About Google Book Search

Google's mission is to organize the world's information and to make it universally accessible and useful. Google Book Search helps readers discover the world's books while helping authors and publishers reach new audiences. You can search through the full text of this book on the web at <http://books.google.com/>

EducT

1118

97.677

# GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION

---

PEARSON

EducT 1118.97.677



3 2044 102 849 825

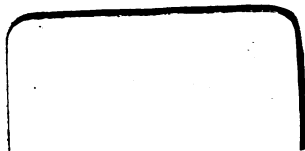
HARVARD COLLEGE  
LIBRARY



THE GIFT OF  
GEORGE GRAFTON WILSON  
Professor of International Law

see.

13-14



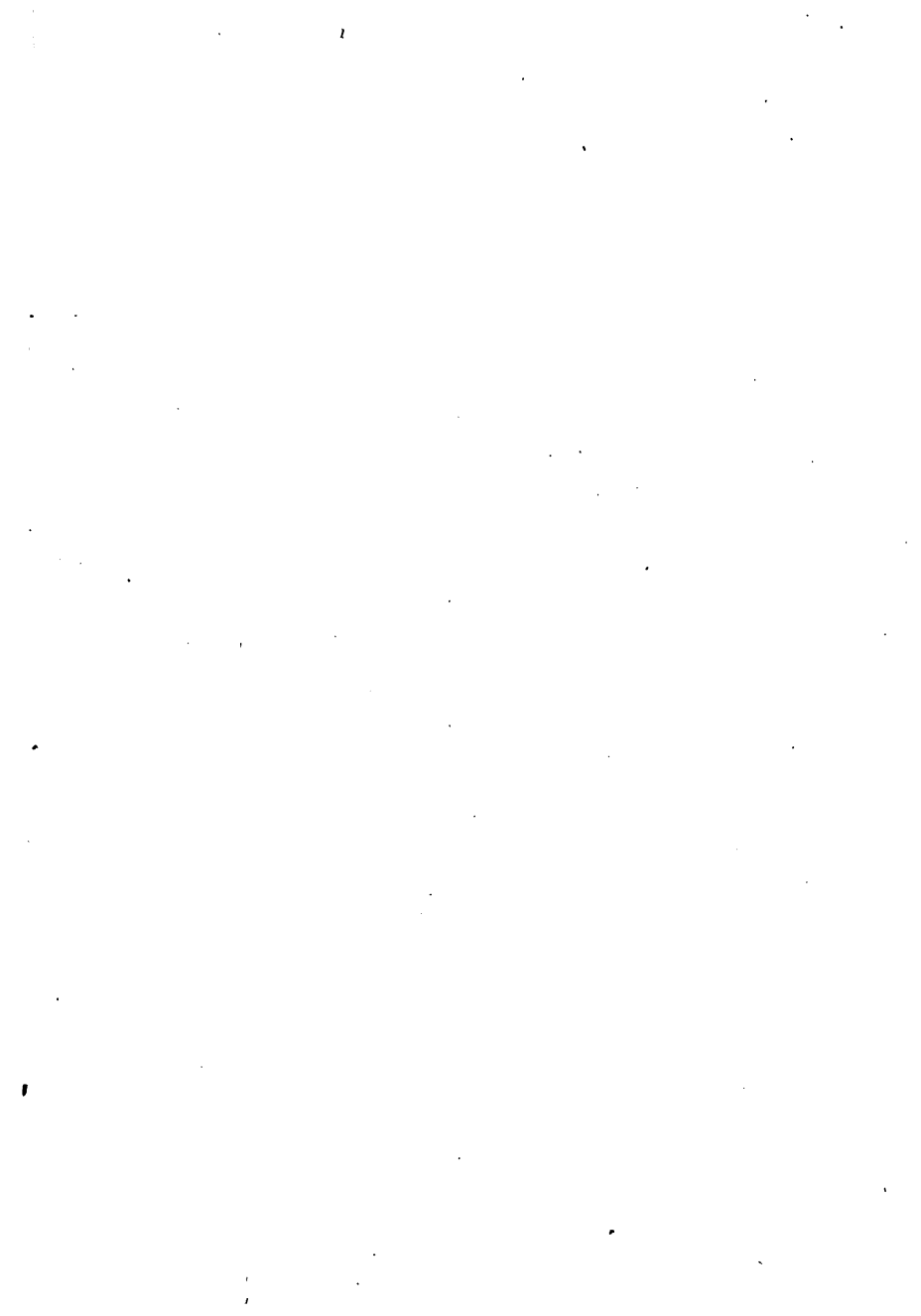
**Grafton L. Wilson.**

**GRAFTON L. WILSON**

**GRAFTON L. WILSON**

**GRAFTON L. WILSON**







# GREEK

## PROSE COMPOSITION

BY

HENRY CARR PEARSON, A.B., HARVARD

HORACE MANN SCHOOL, TEACHERS COLLEGE, NEW YORK



NEW YORK ·· CINCINNATI ·· CHICAGO  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY



Edue T 1118.97.677

HARVARD COLLEGE LIBRARY  
GIFT OF  
MR. GEORGE C. WILSON

Sept 14, 1925

COPYRIGHT, 1897, BY  
AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

---

PEARSON, GREEK PROSE

W. P. 13

## PREFACE

---

THE aim of this book is (1) to combine a thorough and systematic study of the essentials of Greek syntax with abundant practice in translating connected English into Attic Greek; and (2) to afford constant practice in writing Greek at sight.

Part I contains, in graded lessons, the principal points of Greek syntax, the unusual and non-essential being purposely omitted. These lessons are designed for use at the beginning of the second year's study of Greek, thereby serving as a partial review of the first year's work and as an introduction to the composition work in connection with the reading of Xenophon's *Anabasis*.

Part II contains short, simple English sentences, based on Books I-IV of the *Anabasis*. These should be used daily in connection with the reading of the text.

Part III contains connected English prose, based on Books I-IV of the *Anabasis*. This is carefully graded, so that the student who performs faithfully the work outlined here will be able to pass the entrance examination of any of the American colleges.

The method of writing Greek at sight used in this book needs a word of explanation. It is the outgrowth of the author's personal experience in the classroom, and his belief that the best results can be obtained only by systematic practice in connection with the regular work.

At intervals, review lessons are introduced, containing a list of the important words and an enumeration of the principal con-

structions used in the preceding sentences. The instructor should form original work for his class to translate at sight, based on these words and constructions. While, strictly speaking, this is not sight work, it enables the student to make definite preparation for this kind of work, and gives him valuable practice in the offhand use of words and principles of grammar. Furthermore, it enables the teacher to vary the difficulty of the work to suit the ability of his class.

The connected prose at the beginning of Part III has been made very simple, so that Part II may be omitted by those instructors who do not find time to do composition work along with the first reading of Xenophon. The best results, however, will be obtained from a completion of all the work here given.

The author is in full sympathy with the tendency to read other prose works than Xenophon's *Anabasis* in college preparatory work, and would have been glad to incorporate in this book exercises based on other prose authors than Xenophon. The wide diversity of opinion, however, as to just what authors should be read, and the fact that Xenophon's *Anabasis* is made the basis of the composition requirement by nearly all the colleges, has made it practically impossible to prepare such exercises at present.

The author acknowledges his indebtedness to many of the textbooks in Greek Composition.

Mr. C. J. Geer, of the English department of the Shady Side Academy, Pittsburg, has given valuable assistance in the preparation of the English work of Parts II and III.

The author desires especially to thank William R. Crabbe, Ph.D., the principal of Shady Side Academy, for his assistance and kind encouragement. As a successful Greek instructor of long experience, his advice in the formation of this book and his criticism in the correction of the manuscript have been invaluable.

HENRY CARR PEARSON.

# TABLE OF CONTENTS

## PART I

LESSON	PAGE
I. The Article. The Nominative, Vocative, and Accusative Cases . . . . .	7
II. The Genitive Case . . . . .	11
III. The Dative Case . . . . .	14
IV. Pronouns: Demonstrative, Interrogative, Indefinite, Relative . . . . .	16
V. Pronouns: Personal, Direct and Indirect Reflexives, Possessive, <i>αὐτός</i> . . . . .	20
VI. Review with Sight Practice . . . . .	24
VII. Tenses, Exhortations, Commands, and Prohibitions . . . . .	26
VIII. Causal Clauses, Interrogative Subjunctive, Subjunctive and Future Indicative with <i>ὅτι μή</i> . . . . .	29
IX. Wishes. <i>Ought</i> and <i>Must</i> . . . . .	31
X. Purpose and Object Clauses . . . . .	35
XI. Review with Sight Practice. The Second Aorist Tense System . . . . .	37
XII. Particular Conditions: Simple and Contrary to Fact . . . . .	39
XIII. Particular Conditions: Vivid and Less Vivid Future . . . . .	42
XIV. General Conditions . . . . .	44
XV. Relative Conditions. <i>ἔνθα</i> . . . . .	46
XVI. Review with Sight Practice . . . . .	49
XVII. <i>Before</i> and <i>Until</i> . . . . .	50
XVIII. Indirect Discourse. Simple Sentences . . . . .	52
XIX. Indirect Discourse. Infinitive and Participle . . . . .	55
XX. Indirect Discourse. Complex Sentences . . . . .	57
XXI. Review with Sight Practice. Synopsis of <i>οἷα</i> . . . . .	60
XXII. The Infinitive. Result Clauses . . . . .	61
XXIII. The Participle . . . . .	64

## PART II

	PAGE
NOTES ON CONNECTIVES . . . . .	68
REMARKS ON TRANSLATION . . . . .	70
EXERCISES BASED ON THE ANABASIS:	
Book I . . . . .	72
Book II . . . . .	95
Book III . . . . .	109
Book IV . . . . .	121

## PART III

## EXERCISES BASED ON THE ANABASIS:

Book I . . . . .	135
Book II . . . . .	148
Book III . . . . .	157
Book IV . . . . .	165
ENGLISH-GREEK VOCABULARY . . . . .	173
EXAMINATION PAPERS . . . . .	180

---

The grammatical references are to the Greek Grammars in most common use; H. = Hadley-Allen. G. = Goodwin. B. = Babbitt. Go. = Goodell.

# GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION

## LESSON I

### THE ARTICLE—THE NOMINATIVE, VOCATIVE, AND ACCUSATIVE CASES

1. The definite article, **ὁ, ἡ, τό**, generally corresponds to our article *the*.

2. An adjective or other word qualifying a noun is said to be in the Attributive position when it follows the article directly. It is in the Predicate position when it does not directly follow its article.

#### ATTRIBUTIVE POSITION

ὁ ἀγαθὸς ἀνὴρ	}	<i>The brave man.</i>
ὁ ἀνὴρ ὁ ἀγαθός		
ἀνὴρ ὁ ἀγαθός		

#### PREDICATE POSITION

ὁ ἀνὴρ ἀγαθός	}	<i>The man is brave.</i>
ἀγαθὸς ὁ ἀνὴρ		

[H. 666-670: G. 959-963, 971-973: B. 451-453: Go. 552.]

3. The following are some important facts to remember about the use of the article:

1. The article is often used as a possessive pronoun when such a meaning is obvious: **ἡ δὲ μήτηρ ἀποπέμπει ἐπὶ τὴν ἀρχήν**, *his mother sends him back to his province*. [H. 658: G. 949: B. 447: Go. 551, d.]

2. Names of persons usually omit the article. Yet they often take it, to mark them as before mentioned or well known: ὁ Κῦρος, *Cyrus*. [H. 663: G. 943: B. 446: Go. 551, a.]

3. Abstract nouns often take the article: ἡ ἀρετή, *virtue*; ἡ δικαιοσύνη, *justice*. [H. 659: G. 944: B. 448: Go. 551, b.]

4. The article is generally omitted with βασιλεύς when referring to the king of Persia. [H. 660, c: G. 957: B. 446, n.]

5. The demonstrative pronouns οὗτος, ὅδε, and ἐκεῖνος usually have the predicate position: οὗτος ὁ στρατιώτης, *this soldier*. [H. 673: G. 974: B. 456: Go. 553.]

6. πᾶς, ἅπας, σύμπας, and ὅλος generally have the predicate position. So with μέσος, meaning *the middle of*: μέση ἡ χώρα, *the middle of the country* (while ἡ μέση χώρα would mean *the middle country*). [H. 672: G. 979: B. 454, 455.]

7. The article has a demonstrative force before μέν and δέ in expressing contrast: ὁ μέν . . . ὁ δέ, *this man . . . that man, the one . . . the other*. [H. 654: G. 981: B. 443, 1: Go. 549, a.]

8. Adverbs and limiting phrases, such as prepositions and their cases, may be used with the article and noun. The noun may be understood and is, therefore, frequently omitted: Μένων καὶ οἱ σὺν αὐτῷ, *Menon and those with him* (his men); οἱ ὀπισθεν, *those in the rear*; οἱ ἄνω στρατιῶται, *the soldiers who are above*; οἱ νῦν, *the men of the present generation*.

4. There is no indefinite article in Greek. The English *a* or *an* must therefore usually be omitted in translation: πόλις, *a city*. When the writer has in mind some particular person or thing, but does not name it, the indefinite pronoun τις is used: ἀνὴρ τις ταῦτα ἐποίησε, *a (certain) man did this*.

τις is enclitic, and generally follows its noun.

5. A predicate substantive, with εἰμί and verbs signifying to Become, be Named, be Elected, be Thought, and Appear, is in the same case as the subject: αἰρεῖται στρατηγός, *he is elected general*. [H. 614: G. 907: B. 341, 1: Go. 534, b.]

6. The Accusative joined with a verb, adjective, or substantive may denote that In Respect to Which the expression is used. This is called the Accusative of Specification: τά τε ἄλλα Κῦρος ἐτίμησέ με, *Cyrus honored me in other respects*; ὁ ποταμὸς ἦν τὸ εὖρος πληθριαῖος, *the river was a plethrum in width*. [H. 718: G. 1058: B. 337: Go. 537.]

7. The Accusative may denote Extent of Time or Space: ἐνταῦθα ἔμειναν τρεῖς ἡμέρας, *there they remained three days*; ἐξήλαυνε παρασάγγην, *he marched a parasang*. [H. 720: G. 1062: B. 338: Go. 538.]

8. An Accusative is often used Adverbially: τέλος, *finally*; τὸ λοιπόν, *thenceforth*; τὴν ταχίστην, *by the quickest (road)*. [H. 719: G. 1060: B. 336: Go. 540.]

9. Two Accusatives, usually one of the Person, the other of the Thing, may follow verbs meaning to Ask, Demand, Remind, Teach, Clothe, Unclothe, Conceal, Deprive: Κῦρον δὲ τὰ πλοῖα αἰτήσω, *I will ask Cyrus for the boats*; ἐβούλοντο ἀφαιρεῖσθαι τοὺς Ἕλληνας τὴν γῆν, *they wished to deprive the Greeks of their land*. [H. 724: G. 1069: B. 340: Go. 535.]

10. Verbs meaning to Do Anything To or Say Anything Of a person or thing may take two Accusatives: κακῶς αὐτοὺς ἐποίησε, *he did harm to them* (here κακῶς equals κακά, the second Accusative). [H. 725, a: G. 1073: B. 340: Go. 534, a.]



11. The Accusative is used after the adverbs of swearing, *νή* and *μά*, *by*. *νή* introduces an affirmative oath and *μά* a negative one: *μά τοὺς θεοὺς*, *no, by the gods*.

The student will notice that *νή* is opposite the meaning to our English *nay*. This will help him to distinguish the two words. [H. 723: G. 1066-67: B. 344: Go. 532.]

12. When the Vocative is used as the case of address, *ὦ* is often written before it. [H. 709: G. 1044: B. 327: Go. 61, *a.*]

*Article*, H. 654-673: G. 941-981: B. 444-458: Go. 549-556. *Nom. and Voc.*, H. 706-709: G. 1043-1045: B. 325-327: Go. 503-504. *Acc.*, H. 710-726: G. 1046-1082: B. 328-346: Go. 529-541.

### 13. TRANSLATE:

1. All the soldiers went back to their city.
2. You did this to a (certain) man.
3. "I will remind the whole army of this," said Cyrus.
4. This man was made general by the great king.
5. Xenophon was general during the whole retreat (*κατά-βασις*).
6. He remained in the middle of the city for three years.
7. "Yes, by Zeus," said he, "the man is brave."
8. Cyrus and his men are not braver than those in the van.
9. The Greeks are asking Cyrus for a guide.
10. That man was brave in battle, but in other matters a coward.

## LESSON II

## THE GENITIVE CASE

14. In its relation to another noun, the Genitive may denote :

1. Possession (Possessive Genitive): τὸ τοῦ πατρὸς πλοῖον, *the father's boat*.

2. The subject of an action or feeling (Subjective Genitive): ἡ τοῦ στρατηγοῦ εὐνοία, *the good will of the general* (i.e. which the general feels).

3. The object of an action or feeling (Objective Genitive): ὁ τῶν βαρβάρων φόβος τῶν Ἑλλήνων, *the barbarians' fear of the Greeks* (i.e. the Greeks were the object of their fear).

4. Material or contents, including that of which anything consists (Genitive of Material): δύο χοίνικες ἀλφίτων, *two quarts of meal*.

5. Measure of space, time, or value (Genitive of Measure): ποδῶν πέντε ποταμός, *a river of five feet* (in depth).

6. The whole after nouns denoting a part (Partitive Genitive): εἷς τούτων ἦν Ἕλλην, *one of these was a Greek*.  
[H. 729: G. 1085: B. 348-352: Go. 506.]

15. The Genitive may be used as the object of a verb. This is often the case when the verb affects the object only in part. Such verbs are those that mean to Share, Enjoy, Hit, Miss, Aim, Begin, Lead, Rule, Take Hold of, Touch, Perceive, Hear, Taste, Smell, Remember, Forget: ἀρχειν τοῦ ἔργου, *to begin the work*; ἤκουσε θορύβου, *he heard a noise*; τῆς βασιλείας μεταδώσω, *I will*

*share the kingdom ; ἡγήτο τοῦ στρατεύματος, he led the army.*

1. Verbs of hearing usually have the Thing Heard in the Accusative and the Person From Whom in the Genitive: ἤκουσε Τισσαφέρνους τὸν στόλον, *he heard of the expedition from Tissaphernes.*

2. The Genitive very often expresses the Part Taken Hold of: ἔλαβον τῆς ζώνης τὸν Ὀρόνταν, *they took hold of Orontas by the girdle.*

3. The verb ἄγω is an exception to the rule that verbs of leading and ruling take the Genitive. [H. 737-742: G. 1097, 1099, 1102: B. 356: Go. 510, 511.]

16. The Genitive is also used with verbs denoting Separation, Comparison, Source. Such verbs are those that mean to Deprive, Remove, Spare, Release, Abandon, Differ, Surpass, Be Superior or Inferior to, Be Full of, Want: ἀσκῶν δισχιλίων δεήσομαι, *I shall need two thousand skins ; ἀπέχει τοῦ ποταμοῦ σταθμόν, he is a day's journey distant from the river.*

NOTE. — What other construction may be used after a verb of depriving? [H. 743, 748, 749, 750: G. 1112, 1117, 1120, 1130: B. 362, 364, 365: Go. 509.]

17. The Genitive expresses the Cause, Crime, or Value.

1. The Cause, after verbs of Praise, Pity, Anger, and Revenge: τῆς ἐλευθερίας ὑμᾶς εὐδαιμονίζω, *I congratulate you on your freedom.* [H. 744: G. 1126: B. 366: Go. 509, c.]

2. The Crime, after verbs of Accusing, Acquitting, Condemning, and Convicting: διώκω σε ἀσεβείας, *I prosecute you for impiety.* [H. 745: G. 1121: B. 367: Go. 514.]

3. The Value, after verbs of Buying, Selling, Valuing, etc.: δραχμῆς πρίασθαι, *to buy for a drachme.* [H. 746: G. 1133: B. 353: Go. 513.]

18. Many verbs compounded with a preposition take the Genitive when the preposition, used by itself in the same sense, would have that case.

Especially many compounds of *κατά* which have the sense of feeling or acting against, take the Genitive of the Person: *καταγελῶ ὑμῶν*, *I laugh at you*. [H. 751-752: G. 1132: B. 370.]

19. Many adjectives are followed by the Genitive. Such adjectives are generally kindred in meaning to verbs which take the Genitive. [H. 753: G. 1139-1140: B. 362, 2, 367: Go. 516.]

20. The Genitive expresses the Time Within Which an action occurs: *βασιλεὺς δέκα ἡμερῶν μαχεῖται*, *the king will fight within ten days*. [H. 759: G. 1136: B. 359: Go. 515.]

21. Adjectives and adverbs of the comparative degree are followed by the Genitive when *ἢ*, *than*, is omitted. [H. 755: G. 1153: B. 363: Go. 517.]

*Gen.*, H. 727-761: G. 1083-1156: B. 347-372: Go. 505-518.

## 22. TRANSLATE:

1. For what (*τί*) does he need the whole army?
2. They heard these things from the general's daughter.
3. For many days Clearchus led the army.
4. They arrived at a river six feet deep.
5. He began his speech as follows: "I will not take vengeance on them for their evil deeds."
6. Nobody missed his man.
7. In the night they had fear of the Greeks.
8. Those men are more cowardly than these with us.
9. He bought a chariot for twenty darics.
10. They overcame the enemy when they were<sup>1</sup> three stadia distant from the city.

<sup>1</sup> Use participle.

## LESSON III

## THE DATIVE CASE

23. The Dative is the case of the Indirect Object of a transitive verb. This object is generally introduced in English by *to*: ἔδωκε τῷ ἀνδρὶ ἵππον, *he gave a horse to the man*, or *he gave the man a horse*. [H. 763-764: G. 1158: B. 375: Go. 520.]

24. The Dative is used with many intransitive verbs (omit *to* in translation) meaning to Benefit, Serve, Obey, Please, Profit, Trust, Aid, Befit, and their contraries; also with verbs denoting disposition toward any one, as Anger, Envy, Favor, Threats.

ἐπίστευον αὐτῷ αἱ πόλεις, *the cities trusted him*.

τῷ στρατηγῷ ἐπείθετο, *he obeyed his general*.

τῷ βασιλεὶ βοηθήσω, *I will aid the king*.

1. ὠφελέω, *to aid*, takes the Accusative instead of the Dative. [H. 764, 2: G. 1160: B. 376: Go. 520, a.]

25. The Dative indicates the person or thing to whose Advantage or Disadvantage the action of the verb takes place. This Dative is sometimes translated like the Genitive of Possession.

τοῖς νεανίσκοις ἐνέχεαν οἶνον, *they poured in wine for the young men*.

τὰ ὅπλα τοῖς στρατιώταις ἐπὶ ἀμαξῶν ἤγετο, *the arms of the soldiers were carried on wagons* (literally, *the arms were carried for the soldiers*, etc.). [H. 767: G. 1165: B. 378: Go. 523.]

26. The Dative with εἰμί, γίγνομαι, and similar verbs may denote the Possessor: τί ἔσται ἡμῖν, *what shall we*

*have?* The same idea could be expressed (though less commonly) by using **ἔχω**. [H. 768: G. 1173: B. 379: Go. 524, a.]

**27.** Just as was the case with the Genitive, the Dative follows many adjectives and adverbs and some verbal substantives kindred in meaning to the verbs which take the Dative of the indirect object or of advantage or disadvantage. [H. 765: G. 1174: Go. 522.]

**28.** The Dative is used with words that imply Likeness or Unlikeness and Association or Opposition. Some common verbs coming under this rule are **πολεμέω, μάχομαι, and ἔπομαι**. [H. 772-773: G. 1175: B. 392: Go. 525.]

**29.** Many verbs compounded with **ἐν, σύν, ἐπί,** and some with **πρός, παρά, περὶ, ὑπό** take the Dative: **ἡμῖν ἐπιθήσονται, they will attack us**. [H. 775: G. 1179: B. 394.]

**30.** The Dative is used to denote Cause, Manner, and Means or Instrument; also the Degree of Difference after comparatives: **προτέρα Κύρου πέντε ἡμέραις ἀφίκετο, she arrived five days before Cyrus** (literally, *before Cyrus by five days*). [H. 776, 781: G. 1181, 1184: B. 387-391: Go. 526.]

**31.** The Dative denotes the Time When an action takes place: **τῇ ὑστεραίᾳ, on the next day**. [H. 782: G. 1192: B. 385: Go. 527, c.]

**1.** **χράομαι, to use,** takes the Dative case (like *utor*, which takes the Ablative).

**Caution.** — Do not express Motion To or Towards by the Dative. Use a preposition and the Accusative.

*Dative*, H. 762-783: G. 1157-1198: B. 373-395: Go. 519-527.

## 32. TRANSLATE :

1. I do not envy the king's men.
2. For seven days the soldiers followed him.
3. I persuaded him to obey them.
4. There Cyrus had a palace.
5. This soldier always helped the king.
6. He used the arrows which he had.
7. On that day fear fell upon the Greeks.
8. The mercenaries were very angry with Clearchus.
9. A brave man will not fight with a friend.
10. On the fourth day Tissaphernes attacked the Greeks.

---

## LESSON IV

### PRONOUNS: DEMONSTRATIVE, INTERROGATIVE, INDEFINITE, RELATIVE

33. 1. The ordinary demonstrative pronoun is οὗτος, *this*. Of the other demonstratives, ὅδε, *this* (here), is used of something near or present; ἐκεῖνος, *that* (yonder), of something remote.

2. οὗτος is used in referring *back* to something already mentioned; ὅδε in referring *forward* to something about to be mentioned.

3. There occur in Attic prose several compounds of οὗτος and ὅδε, as τοιοῦτος and τοιόσδε, *such*, and τοσούτος and τοσόσδε, *so much, so many*. The student will notice that all pronouns compounded with τοι- or οι- denote Quality, and with τοσ- or οσ-, Quantity.

4. Thus we generally find at the end of a speech such expressions as ἔλεξε ταῦτα (or τοιαῦτα); while before

the speech we find **ἐλεξε τάδε** (or **τοιάδε**). [H. 271, 272, 273: G. 409, 429: B. 480-482: Go. 205-212.]

**Caution.** — Remember what was said in Lesson I, that demonstrative pronouns, when used with a noun, usually take the predicate position.

**34.** 1. The principal interrogative pronoun is **τίς, τίς, τί**, *who? which? what?* This always has the acute accent on the first syllable. It is declined as follows:

SINGULAR		PLURAL	
M. and F.	N.	M. and F.	N.
Nom. <b>τίς</b>	<b>τί</b>	<b>τίνες</b>	<b>τίνα</b>
Gen. <b>τίνος, τοῦ</b>		<b>τίνων</b>	
Dat. <b>τίνι, τῷ</b>		<b>τίσι</b>	
Acc. <b>τίνα</b>	<b>τί</b>	<b>τίνας</b>	<b>τίνα</b>
DUAL			
	N.A.V.	<b>τίνα</b>	
	G. and D.	<b>τίνοιν</b>	

2. The indefinite pronoun is **τις, τις, τι**, *some, any*. This pronoun is enclitic. It is declined just like the interrogative, except that the accent in declension is always on the ultima.

3. The interrogative of Quality is **ποῖος, ποῖα, ποῖον**, *of what sort?* and of Quantity **πόσος, πόση, πόσον**, *how much?* [H. 277-278: G. 415-416: B. 489-491, 151: Go. 217-222.]

**35.** 1. The relative pronouns are **ὅς, ἥ, ὅ**, *who, which, that, what*, and **ὅστις, ἥτις, ὅτι**, *whoever, whichever, whatever*. The latter is called the indefinite relative.

2. **ὅστις** is a compound of **ὅς** and **τις**, and both parts are declined together. The accent of **ὅς** is not affected by the presence of **τις**.



	Masc.	Fem.	Neut.
Nom.	ὅστις	ἥτις	ὅ τι
Gen.	οὗτινος, ὅτου	ἧστινος	οὗτινος, ὅτου
Dat.	ὧτινι, ὅτῳ	ἧτινι	ὧτινι, ὅτῳ
Acc.	ὄντινα	ἦντινα	ὅ τι
N.A.V.	ὅτινε	ἥτινε	ὅτινε
G. and D.	οἰντινοιν	οἰντινοιν	οἰντινοιν
Nom.	οἵτινες	αἵτινες	ἅτινα
Gen.	ἧντινων, ὅτων	ἧντινων	ἧντινων, ὅτων
Dat.	οἷστίσι, ὅτοις	αἷστίσι	οἷστίσι, ὅτοις
Acc.	οὓστινας	ἄστινας	ἅτινα

3. The following relatives of Quality occur: **οἷος** and **ὁποῖος**, *of which kind, (such) as*; and of Quantity, **ὅσος** and **ὁπόσος**, *how much, how many, (as much or as many) as*. [H. 275, 280, 282: G. 421, 425, 429: B. 151: Go. 215, 222.]

36. The relative agrees with its antecedent in gender, number, and person, but its case is determined by the construction of the clause in which it stands: **ὁ ἵππος, ὃν εἶδε, καλὸς ἦν**, *the horse which he saw was beautiful*. [H. 627: G. 1019: B. 462: Go. 613, a.]

37. The antecedent of the relative may be omitted, when it is implied in the context. Sometimes it is incorporated into the relative clause.

**οὐκ ἀπεκρύπτετο ἦν εἶχε γνώμην**, *he did not conceal the opinion which he had* (i.e. **τὴν γνώμην ἦν εἶχε**).  
**ποιοῦσι ἃ βούλονται**, *they do what they wish* (i.e. **ταῦτα ἃ βούλονται**). [H. 995-996: G. 1037, 1026: B. 461: Go. 613, d, 614.]

38. When a relative would naturally be in the Accusative as the object of the action of a verb, it is generally assimilated to the case of its antecedent, if this is a Genitive or a Dative: **ἄξιοι τῆς ἐλευθερίας ἣς κέκτησθε** (instead

of ἣν κέκτησθε), *worthy of the freedom which you have acquired.* [H. 994: G. 1031: B. 465: Go. 613, b.]

39. The indefinite relative, instead of the interrogative, is often used to introduce an indirect question: ἔλεγεν ὃ τι ἐποίησε, *he told what he did.* [H. 1011: G. 1013: B. 490: Go. 621.]

40. The student should remember that a relative clause is very often expressed in Greek by the participle, with or without the article.

τὴν πόλιν οὖσαν ἐν τῷ πεδίῳ, *the city which was in the plain* (literally, *being in the plain*).

ὁ ταῦτα ποιήσας, *he who has done this.*

τὰ γιγνόμενα, *those things which are going on.*

τὰ γεγενημένα, *those things which have happened.*

**Caution.** — In rendering expressions like *these things which have happened*, do not use ταῦτα for *these things*. The article alone with the participle is the Greek usage.

#### 41. TRANSLATE:

1. Such words Tissaphernes spoke, but Xenophon replied as follows.
2. They came to a certain river that was twenty feet wide.
3. The man who has planned these things is clever.
4. "Who is this guide?" said Cyrus.
5. That man is braver than the one who is present.
6. We who are so brave (τοιοῦτοι) and so many are Greeks.
7. He told us what Cyrus said.
8. And with her he sent the soldiers whom Menon had.
9. And they ask him how large the country is.
10. What sort of boy has he?

## LESSON V

PRONOUNS: PERSONAL, DIRECT AND INDIRECT REFLEXIVES,  
POSSESSIVE, αὐτός

**42.** The Nominative forms of the personal pronouns are omitted unless emphatic. If emphatic, they are expressed. [H. 677: G. 985: B. 467: Go. 557.]

**43.** 1. A reflexive pronoun usually refers to the subject of the sentence. When it refers to the subject of the clause in which it stands, it is called a direct reflexive.

2. In a dependent clause, the reflexive pronoun often refers to the subject, not of the dependent, but of the principal verb. It is then called an indirect reflexive, and must be distinguished from the direct reflexive.

γνώθι σεαυτόν, *know thyself*.

ἐβούλετο ἅπαν τὸ στράτευμα πρὸς ἑαυτόν ἔχειν τὴν γνώμην,  
*he wished the whole army to be devoted to himself.* (ἐαυ-  
τόν, an indirect reflexive, because it refers to the subject  
of ἐβούλετο, the principal verb.) [H. 683, a: G. 993: B. 470,  
471: Go. 200.]

**44.** The personal pronouns of the first and second persons are declined thus:

		First Person	Second Person
SING.	Nom.	ἐγώ	σύ
	Gen.	ἐμοῦ, μου	σοῦ
	Dat.	ἐμοί, μοί	σοί
	Acc.	ἐμέ, μέ	σέ
DUAL	N.A.V.	νέ	σφέ
	G. and D.	νῶν	σφῶν

		First Person	Second Person
PLUR.	Nom.	ἡμεῖς	ὕμεῖς
	Gen.	ἡμῶν	ὕμῶν
	Dat.	ἡμῖν	ὕμῖν
	Acc.	ἡμᾶς	ὕμᾶς

45. There is no pronoun of the third person in regular use. In all cases but the Nominative **αὐτός** serves as the pronoun of the third person, *him, her, it, them*. When the pronoun of the third person is emphatic in the Nominative case, some demonstrative is used. **αὐτός** is declined like **ἀγαθός**, except that it has **αὐτό** for **αὐτόν** in the Nominative and Accusative neut. sing.

46. **Αὐτός** is used in three ways :

1. As a pronoun of the third person.
2. As an intensive, meaning *self, very* (like *ipse* in Latin) : **αὐτὸς ὁ ἀνὴρ**, *the man himself*.
3. Preceded by the article, meaning *the same* (like *idem* in Latin) : **ὁ αὐτὸς ἀνὴρ**, *the same man* (**τὰ αὐτά**, *the same things* is generally written **ταῦτά**; not to be confused with **ταῦτα**. [H. 678-680: G. 989: B. 475: Go. 199.]

47. The following is the declension of the reflexive pronouns :

	First Person	Second Person	Third Person
Gen.	ἐμαυτοῦ, -ῆς	σεαυτοῦ, -ῆς	ἐαυτοῦ, -ῆς, -οῦ, or αὐτοῦ, etc.
Dat.	ἐμαυτῷ, -ῇ	σεαυτῷ, -ῇ	ἐαυτῷ, -ῇ, -ῳ, or αὐτῷ, etc.
Acc.	ἐμαυτόν, -ήν	σεαυτόν, -ήν	ἐαυτόν, -ήν, -ό, or αὐτόν, etc.
Gen.	ἡμῶν αὐτῶν	ὕμῶν αὐτῶν	ἐαυτῶν or σφῶν αὐτῶν
Dat.	ἡμῖν αὐτοῖς, -αῖς	ὕμῖν αὐτοῖς, -αῖς	ἐαυτοῖς, -αῖς, or σφίσιν αὐτοῖς, -αῖς
Acc.	ἡμᾶς αὐτούς, -άς	ὕμᾶς αὐτούς, -άς	ἐαυτούς, -άς, -ά, or σφᾶς αὐτούς, -άς

Nom.	—	σφεις
Gen.	οῦ	σφῶν
Dat.	οἷ	σφίσι
Acc.	ἑ	σφᾶς

ἐμαυτοῦ and σεαυτοῦ are used both as direct and indirect reflexives.

οὔ, οἷ, ἑ is an indirect reflexive of the third person, but the forms οὔ and ἑ are not used in Attic Greek.

ἐαυτοῦ, a direct reflexive, is used as an indirect reflexive in place of οὔ and ἑ.

48. The following forms of the personal pronouns are enclitic: μοῦ, μοί, μέ; σου, σοί, σέ; οὔ, οἷ, ἑ.

If the pronoun is emphatic, and in general after prepositions, the enclitic forms of the pronoun retain their accent, and in the first person the longer forms ἐμοῦ, ἐμοί, ἐμέ are then used. [H. 263: G. 986: B. 70: Go. 19.]

49. 1. The possessive pronouns are formed from the personal pronouns. They are ἐμός, *my, mine*; ἡμέτερος, *our*; σός, *your* (sing.), ὑμέτερος, *your* (plur.). They are inflected like ἀγαθός, μακρός.

2. The possessive pronouns take the article when a particular object is referred to: ἐμός φίλος, *a friend of mine*; ὁ ἐμός φίλος, *my friend* (the particular one). [H. 675: G. 946, 1: B. 476-478: Go. 204.]

50. 1. There is no possessive of the third person in Attic prose. The Genitive of αὐτός, in the predicate position, is used to express *his, her, its, their*.

2. In a like manner the Genitives of the personal pronoun (especially in the singular) are sometimes used in the predicate position, instead of the possessives ἐμός, ἡμέτερος, σός, ὑμέτερος.

3. Genitives of the reflexive pronouns, when they express possession, take the attribute position.

ὁ ἐμός πατήρ  
ὁ πατήρ ὁ ἐμός  
πατήρ ὁ ἐμός  
ὁ πατήρ μου } *my father.*  
εἶδε τὸν πατέρα αὐτῶν, *he saw their father.*  
τῇ ἑαυτοῦ χειρὶ, *with his own hand.*

[H. 690, 689, 692, 3: G. 998, 2, 1002, 1003: B. 466-479: Co. 194-204, 557-559.]

# 51. TABLE OF PERSONAL, REFLEXIVE, AND POSSESSIVE PRONOUNS

	Personal	Direct Reflexives	Indirect Reflexives	Possessives
First Person	ἐγώ	ἐμαυτοῦ	ἐμαυτοῦ	ἐμός (sing.), ἡμέτερος (plur.), or Gen. of personal in predicate position
Second Person	σύ	σεαυτοῦ	σεαυτοῦ	σός (sing.), ὑμέτερος (plur.), or Gen. of personal in predicate position
Third Person	αὐτός in all cases but Nom.	ἐαυτοῦ or αὐτοῦ	(οὗ), οἱ, (ἐ), etc. Forms in ( ) not Attic. Use ἐαυτοῦ	Use Gen. of αὐτός in the predicate position

NOTE. — Remember that the article is often used where in English we use an unemphatic possessive pronoun (3, 1).

## 52. TRANSLATE:

1. That young man killed himself.
2. You are a Greek, but I am a Persian.
3. When he saw them, he laughed.
4. They did not wish the enemy to see them.
5. My brother sent off his own father.
6. They fought with one another on that day.
7. This soldier was a friend of mine.
8. During the same day the Greeks themselves set out.
9. We have been wronged by their king.
10. Greeks, your general has done the same thing.

---

## LESSON VI

### REVIEW

53. Review carefully all of the principles given in 1-51.

54. Learn thoroughly the meaning of the following list of words, memorizing the principal parts of all the verbs:

- |                             |                       |
|-----------------------------|-----------------------|
| 1. δέω, δέομαι <sup>1</sup> | 5. αἰτέω              |
| 2. ἀκούω                    | 6. ἐρωτάω             |
| 3. μίμνησκω <sup>2</sup>    | 7. ἀφαιρέω            |
| 4. μένω                     | 8. αἰρέω <sup>3</sup> |

<sup>1</sup> δέω, meaning to *want, need, request*, takes the Genitive.

<sup>2</sup> Notice the active and middle meaning. The Perfect middle is used with a present meaning, like *memini* in Latin.

<sup>3</sup> Act. *seize*, mid. *choose*.

- |   |                                 |
|---|---------------------------------|
| 9. κρύπτω                               | 33. χράομαι                     |
| 10. ποιέω (κακῶς or εὖ)                 | 34. ὠφελέω, βοηθέω              |
| 11. ἀφικνέομαι                          | 35. ἐμπίπτω                     |
| 12. ἄρχω                                | 36. μάχομαι                     |
| 13. τιμωρέω                             | 37. ἐπιτίθημι (mid.)            |
| 14. ὠνέομαι                             | 38. ὀργίζομαι                   |
| 15. ἀποδίδωμι (mid.)                    | 39. τόξευμα                     |
| 16. κρατέω                              | 40. βασιλεία                    |
| 17. τυγχάνω                             | 41. ἐνταῦθα                     |
| 18. ἀπέχω                               | 42. αἶ                          |
| 19. ἀμαρτάνω                            | 43. φόβος                       |
| 20. ἀπέρχομαι                           | 44. μισθοφόρος                  |
| 21. ἔτος                                | 45. εὖρος                       |
| 22. κατάβασις                           | 46. δεινός                      |
| 23. ἡγεμών                              | 47. παῖς, παιδός                |
| 24. ἐμπροσθεν                           | 48. ἀποκρίνομαι                 |
| 25. ὀπισθεν                             | 49. βουλεύω                     |
| 26. βάθος                               | 50. βούλομαι                    |
| 27. θυγάτηρ                             | 51. πάρειμι                     |
| 28. πούς, ποδός                         | 52. ἀποκτείνω                   |
| 29. λόγος                               | 53. ὁράω                        |
| 30. πείθω (act. and mid. <sup>1</sup> ) | 54. πορεύω (mid. <sup>2</sup> ) |
| 31. ἔπομαι                              | 55. νεανίας                     |
| 32. φθονέω                              | 56. ἀλλήλων                     |

## 57. γελᾶω

55. From the above list of words, let the instructor form sentences embodying the principles of the first five lessons. The student should write these sentences at sight in the class-room.

<sup>1</sup> Act. *persuade* (Accusative), mid. *obey* (Dative).

<sup>2</sup> Act. *make go*, mid. *proceed*.



## LESSON VII

## TENSES—EXHORTATIONS, COMMANDS, AND PROHIBITIONS

56. Keep in mind the following points in regard to the use of the tenses in the Indicative mood:

1. The Aorist is of very frequent occurrence. It is more often used for the English Perfect than the Perfect itself, and frequently takes the place of the Pluperfect. As distinguished from the Imperfect it expresses a Simple Past Occurrence: *ἐποίησα*, *I did*; while the Imperfect *ἐποίουν* denotes Repeated or Continued Past Action, *I was doing or used to do*. The Aorist is also often used to express the English Imperfect.

Let the student acquire the habit of using the Aorist for the Perfect unless emphasis is put on the fact that the action is completed in present time.

2. In general avoid the use of the Pluperfect.

3. Remember that there are several Perfects with the force of Presents, and Pluperfects with the force of Imperfects: *μύμνημαι*, *I remember*.

4. The following is the division of tenses into Primary or Principal, and Secondary or Historical:

## PRIMARY (PRINCIPAL)

Present  
Future  
Perfect  
Future Perfect

## SECONDARY (HISTORICAL)

Imperfect  
Aorist  
Pluperfect

57. 1. The distinctions of time which mark the tenses of the Indicative are not maintained in the Subjunctive and Imperative, and generally not in the Optative and Infinitive.

2. In using all moods but the Indicative, the Time should be lost sight of and the student should consider only the Kind of Action of the verb, i.e. whether the verb expresses a continuance of the action or a simple occurrence or the completion. The Present tense denotes an action as continued or repeated; the Aorist as simply brought to pass, the Perfect as completed.

ἐὰν τοῦτο ποιῇ (Present), *if he shall do this* (habitually), or *if he shall be doing this*.

ἐὰν τοῦτο ποιήσῃ (Aorist) (simply), *if he shall do this*.

[H. 851: G. 1271-1276: B. 539: Go. 475.]

58. The Present and the Aorist are the tenses commonly used in the Subjunctive, Optative, Imperative, Infinitive, and Participle.

The Perfect is rare in the Subjunctive, and not common in the other moods.

The Future Optative is used only in indirect discourse, and the Future Infinitive is generally used in that construction.

59. The first person of the Subjunctive (generally plural) is used to express an Exhortation. The negative is μή: ἔλθωμεν, *let us go*; μὴ πολέμιοι γενώμεθα, *let us not become enemies*. [H. 866, 1: G. 1344: B. 585: Go. 472.]

60. An exhortation in the third person is expressed by the third person of the Imperative mood: ἐλθέτω ἐπὶ τὴν πόλιν, *let him come to the city*; χαιρόντων, *let him rejoice*. [G. 1342: B. 582: Go. 484.]

61. The second person of the Imperative is used to express a Command or Prohibition: **τοῦτο ποίει**, *do this* (command); **μὴ τοῦτο ποίει**, *do not do this* (prohibition).

62. In negative commands (i.e. prohibitions) **μὴ** is used with the Present Imperative if the act is continued, but with the second person of the Aorist Subjunctive if the simple occurrence of the act is to be expressed.

**μὴ ποίει τοῦτο**, *do not do this* (habitually), or *do not go on doing this*.

**μὴ ποιήσῃς τοῦτο**, *do not do this*, referring to a single action. [H. 874, a: G. 1346: B. 584: Go. 485.]

#### SUMMARY

<i>Let us come,</i>	<b>ἔλθωμεν</b>
<i>Come,</i>	<b>ἔλθετε</b>
<i>Let them come,</i>	<b>ἔλθόντων</b>
<i>Do not come</i> (habitually),	<b>μὴ ἔρχεσθε</b>
<i>Do not come</i> (single act),	<b>μὴ ἔλθητε</b>

#### 63. TRANSLATE:

1. Let us see all the horses that you have.
2. Fellow soldiers, do not be discouraged.
3. Let the king be honored by his sailors.
4. Do not throw your arrows against the enemy.
5. Try to be braver than those who are in his house.
6. Let us not proceed home (**οἴκαδε**), but let us use the provisions that we have.
7. "Hear my words," said Cyrus.
8. Do not shut the door.
9. Let us not do harm to our own country.
10. Do not wonder at this.

## LESSON VIII

## CAUSAL CLAUSES—INTERROGATIVE SUBJUNCTIVE—SUBJUNCTIVE AND FUTURE INDICATIVE WITH οὐ μή

64. Causal clauses state the cause of an action and are introduced by *ὅτι, ὥς, ἐπεί, ἐπειδή, ὅτε* and *ὁπότε*, *because* or *since*. They take the Indicative after both primary and secondary sentences: *ἔλιπε Συέννεσις τὰ ἄκρα, ὅτι ἤκουε*, *Syennesis left the heights, because he heard*; *ταῖς ναυσὶ πολιορκεῖ Μίλητον, ὅτε Τισσαφέρνει φίλη ἐστίν*, *he besieges Miletus with the ships, since it is friendly to Tissaphernes*. [H. 925: G. 1505: B. 598: Go. 629.]

65. The first person of the Subjunctive is used in questions of Appeal, where the speaker asks himself or another what he is to do. The negative is *μή*. In Attic Greek this Subjunctive is often introduced by *βούλει* or *βούλεσθε*: *τοῦτα ποιήσω, shall I do this?* or *βούλει τοῦτο ποιήσω, do you wish that I should do this?* *τί μή εἴπω, what shall I not say?* [H. 866, 3, b: G. 1358: B. 577: Go. 471.]

66. The Subjunctive (usually the Aorist), and sometimes the Future Indicative, with *οὐ μή* may have the force of an emphatic Future with *οὐ*: *οὐ μή τοῦτο γένηται* (sometimes *οὐ μή τοῦτο γενήσεται*), *this will not happen*, or *this surely will not happen*; *οὐ μή ποθ' ἄλῶ, I will never be caught*. [H. 1032: G. 1360: B. 569, 2: Go. 489, a.]

67. *διά* { with the Genitive, *through*.  
           { with the Accusative, *on account of*.

μετά	{	with the Genitive, <i>with</i> .
		with the Accusative, <i>after</i> .
περί	{	with the Genitive, <i>concerning, about</i>
		with the Accusative, <i>around</i> .

68.

## SUMMARY

<i>Since he did this,</i>	}	ἐπεὶ	τοῦτο ἐποίησε.
		ἐπειδὴ	
		ὅτι	
		ὥς	
		ὅτε	
		ὁπότε	

*What are we to do?* τί ποιήσωμεν;

*He will not do this* { οὐ μὴ τοῦτο ποιήσῃ.  
οὐ μὴ τοῦτο ποιήσῃ.

**Caution.** — Do not express questions like *What shall I do?* or *Where shall I go?* where the speaker is in doubt, by the Future Indicative. The Subjunctive is generally used.

## 69. TRANSLATE:

1. Inasmuch as we do not follow him, he is not our paymaster.
2. Where shall I see her?
3. On account of this he found his friend.
4. Hereafter<sup>1</sup> I will *not* wait for them.
5. Shall I proceed with the army through the middle of the village?

<sup>1</sup> Hereafter = *after this*.

6. Let us not go with the king.
7. Will you reply,<sup>1</sup> or shall I speak?
8. Do not be cowards, since the contest is about our lives.<sup>2</sup>
9. Do you wish, then,<sup>3</sup> that I should stop?
10. What shall I give to each of my friends?

---

## LESSON IX

### WISHES — OUGHT AND MUST

70. Wishes may be divided into two classes:

1. Those that refer to the future; as *may he do this*, or *O that he may come*.
2. Those that refer to present or past time, and that wish for something which (it is implied) is not or was not attained. They are commonly called Contrary to Fact wishes; as *O that this had happened* (implying that it did not happen), or *would that he were not here* (implying that he is here now).

71. 1. Wishes that refer to the future are expressed by the Optative, with or without *εἴθε* or *εἰ γάρ*. The negative is *μή*.

2. The Future and Perfect tenses of the Optative are not used in wishes.

*ὑμῖν δὲ τοῦτο οἱ θεοὶ δοῖεν*, *may the gods grant you this*.  
*εἴθε μὴ γένοιτο*, *O that it may not happen*. [H. 870: G. 1507: B. 587: Go. 476.]

<sup>1</sup> Does this come under the rule in 65?

<sup>2</sup> σῶμα, -ατος, τό.

<sup>3</sup> οὐκ.

72. Contrary to fact wishes may be expressed in two ways:

1. By the past tenses of the Indicative with **εἴθε** or **εἰ γάρ**. The Imperfect tense refers to present time, and the Aorist to past time. The Pluperfect is not commonly used. The negative is **μή**.

**εἴθε με εἶδες**, *would that you had seen me* (implying that you did not see me).

**εἰ γὰρ μὴ παρῆν**, *O that he were not present* (implying that he is present).

2. By **ὄφελον**, Aorist of **ὀφείλω**, with the Present or Aorist Infinitive, the Present Infinitive when the wish refers to present time, and the Aorist when it refers to past time. Negative **μή**. The subject is Nominative, subject of **ὄφελον**, not Accusative, subject of the Infinitive.

**ὄφελές με ἰδεῖν**, *would that you had seen me* (literally, *you ought to have seen me*).

**ὄφελε μὴ παρῆναι**, *O that he were not present* (literally, *he ought not to be present*). [H. 871, a: G. 1511, 1512: B. 588: Go. 470.]

73. English expressions that employ the auxiliary verbs Ought or Must, such as *you ought to go*, *he must do this*, are expressed in Greek in several ways. The English construction is generally personal, while the Greek phrase is generally impersonal.

74. The Greek constructions in common use are:

- |  |                         |
|--|-------------------------|
| 1. <b>δεῖ</b> with the Accusative and Infinitive | } <i>ought or must.</i> |
| <b>χρή</b> with the Accusative and Infinitive    |                         |

2. Verbal adjectives in τέος  
 ἀνάγκη, with or without ἔστί, and the  
 Accusative (sometimes Dative) and  
 Infinitive } *must.*

Examples :

τοῦτο αὐτῷ ποιητέον (ἔστί) } *He must do this.*  
 ἀνάγκη (ἔστί) αὐτὸν τοῦτο ποιῆσαι }  
 δεῖ αὐτὸν τοῦτο ποιῆσαι } *He ought to do this, or He*  
 χρὴ αὐτὸν τοῦτο ποιῆσαι } *must do this.*

75. The student will remember the following facts about the use of verbal adjectives in τέος :

1. -τέος is added to that theme of the verb which is obtained by removing the augment and ending of the First Aorist passive.

2. The verbal, when used in the personal construction, is always passive in sense, and expresses Necessity. The agent is expressed by the Dative.

3. The verbal, when used in the impersonal construction (and this is more common), is in the Nominative neuter singular (sometimes plural) with ἔστί expressed or understood. In this use it is practically active in sense and takes an object the same as its verb. The agent is expressed by the Dative.

4. In using the verbal, always recast an active English sentence to its corresponding passive form, as *we must do this* to *it must be done this by us*, or *this must be done by us* before turning the sentence into Greek.

πειστέον ἔστί τῷ στρατηγῷ ὑμῖν, *you must obey your general* (literally, *it must be obeyed your general by you*).

[H. 988-992: G. 1594-1597: B. 235, 663-666: Go. 352-354, 596.]



**Caution.** — In using the impersonals  $\delta\epsilon\iota$  and  $\chi\rho\eta$ , do not employ the Dative and the Infinitive after them; the Accusative and the Infinitive is the common Greek usage. This mistake is very natural, as the impersonal English form is *it is necessary for him*, etc.

## 76. SUMMARY OF THE WISH CONSTRUCTIONS

WISHES. Negative μή.	{	I. Possible.	{ Present or Aorist Optative, with or without $\epsilon\iota\theta\epsilon$ or $\epsilon\iota\gamma\acute{\alpha}\rho$ .
		II. Contrary to Fact.	Present { $\epsilon\iota\theta\epsilon$ or $\epsilon\iota\gamma\acute{\alpha}\rho$ and Imperfect Indicative, or $\omega\phi\epsilon\lambda\omicron\nu$ and Present Infinitive.
			Past { $\epsilon\iota\theta\epsilon$ or $\epsilon\iota\gamma\acute{\alpha}\rho$ and Aorist Indicative, or $\omega\phi\epsilon\lambda\omicron\nu$ and Aorist Infinitive.
			Time.

## 77. TRANSLATE :

1. We must proceed for a day through the plain.
2. May he never find his friends.
3. The man ought to obey his king.
4. Would that Cyrus were not marching inland.<sup>1</sup>
5. On the following day he said, "O that I had not fought the Greeks."
6. Since Cyrus is our general, we ought not to disobey him.
7. The whole army must learn this.
8. We must not await the enemy.
9. Would that the king's men<sup>2</sup> had not fled into the camp.
10. May he not do harm to me.

<sup>1</sup> ἀναβαλεῖν.

<sup>2</sup> the king's men = the king and those with him.

## LESSON X

## PURPOSE AND OBJECT CLAUSES

78. A Purpose clause is one which expresses the end or purpose of the action of a verb.

In English, purpose is indicated in a variety of ways. In the sentence *He came to see me*, the purpose clause *to see me* may be expressed *in order that he might see me*, or *for the purpose of seeing me*, or *in order to see me*, etc.

79. The following are the common ways of expressing purpose in Greek :

1. *ἵνα*, *ὥς*, *ὅπως* and the Subjunctive or Optative.
2. The Infinitive.
3. The Future Participle.
4. A relative with the Future Indicative.

[H. 881, 951, 969, *c*, 911: G. 1365, 1369, 1532, 1442, 1563, 4: B. 590-592, 653, 5: Go. 565, *a*, 615, 636, 638, 642.]

80. In expressing purpose *ἵνα*, *ὥς*,<sup>1</sup> or *ὅπως* take the Subjunctive when the main verb is a primary tense, and the Optative when the main verb is secondary. On the principle of indirect discourse the Subjunctive is often used after a secondary tense. The negative is *μή*.

*ἔρχεται ἵνα τοῦτο ἴδῃ*, *he is coming in order that he may see this.*

*ἦλθεν ἵνα τοῦτο ἴδοι*, *he came that he might see this.*

<sup>1</sup> This word is used by Xenophon, but is not Attic Greek. Avoid its use.

81. Ὡς is often used with the Future Participle to express purpose, indicating the Presumed or Intended rather than the Real purpose.

ἦλθεν ὥς διαλεξόμενός μοι, *he came (as though) to speak with me.* [H. 978: G. 1574: B. 656, 3: Go. 593, c.]

82. The sentence *He sent a man to see me* might be expressed in Greek in the following ways:

	ἵνα	} με ἴδοι.
ἔπεμψεν ἄνδρα ὥς	ὅπως	
	ὅπως	

	ἵνα	} με ἴδῃ.
ἔπεμψεν ἄνδρα ὥς	ὅπως	
	ὅπως	

ἔπεμψεν ἄνδρα ὁψόμενόν με.

ἔπεμψεν ἄνδρα ὃς (or ὅστις) με ὄψεται.

ἔπεμψεν ἄνδρα με ἰδεῖν.

83. After verbs which signify to Care for, Strive for, Effect, and Plan, the object of the action is expressed by ὅπως, *that*, and ὅπως μή, *that not*, with the Future Indicative, after both primary and secondary tenses. The Subjunctive and Optative also are used, but less frequently than the Future Indicative: ἐπιμελεῖται ὅπως μὴ γενήσεται, *he takes care that it may not happen*; βουλεύεται ὅπως μήποτε ἔτι ἔσται ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ, *he plans how he may never again be in the power of his brother.* [H. 885: G. 1372: B. 593: Go. 638, a.]

84. Verbs and phrases which express or imply Fear, Caution, or Danger take μή, *lest* or *that*, or μή οὐ, *that not*, with the Subjunctive, if the main verb is primary, and with the Optative, if the main verb is secondary. The Subjunctive may be retained after a secondary tense: δέδοικα μή

γένηται, *I fear that it may happen*; ἔδεισα μὴ οὐ γένοιτο (or γένηται), *I feared that it would not happen*. [H. 887: G. 1378: B. 594: Go. 610, 611.]

---

85. TRANSLATE :

1. They asked Cyrus for boats, that they might sail away.
  2. They are afraid that the enemy will attack them.
  3. See to it that you are brave.
  4. He collected an army as though to make war on the Thracians.
  5. O that he were present, that I might see him.
  6. He was on his guard lest the Greeks should attack him as he was going away.
  7. I am doing this that my friend may not suffer harm.
  8. He took care that the barbarian should never again capture him.
- 

## LESSON XI

### REVIEW

86. Review all the principles stated in 56-84.

87. Learn thoroughly the meaning of the following words, memorizing the principal parts of all the verbs :

- |              |                |
|--------------|----------------|
| 1. ἀθυμέω    | 9. θύρα        |
| 2. τιμάω     | 10. μισθοδότης |
| 3. ναύτης    | 11. ὄπου       |
| 4. βάλλω     | 12. εὕρισκω    |
| 5. πειράω    | 13. διὰ        |
| 6. ἐπιτήδεια | 14. μέσος      |
| 7. κλείω     | 15. ἀγών       |
| 8. θαυμάζω   | 16. σῶμα       |

- |  |   |
|--|---|
| 17. παύω (act. and mid. <sup>1</sup> ) | 25. ἀποπλέω                             |
| 18. ἕκαστος                            | 26. δέδοικα, ἔδεισα                     |
| 19. πεδῖον                             | 27. φοβέω (act. and mid. <sup>2</sup> ) |
| 20. μετά                               | 28. σκοπέω                              |
| 21. ἀναβαίνω                           | 29. συλλέγω                             |
| 22. πυνθάνομαι, μανθάνω                | 30. φυλάττω (mid.)                      |
| 23. φεύγω                              | 31. ἐπιμελέομαι                         |
| 24. στρατόπεδον                        | 32. αἰρέω, ἀλίσκομαι                    |

88. Keep in mind the following facts in regard to the formation, conjugation, and accent of the Second Aorist tense system :

1. In most Second Aorists the Indicative is conjugated like the Imperfect. The other moods are formed like the Present tense of those moods.

2. The irregularities in accent are: the Second Aorist active Infinitive and the Second Aorist middle Imperative circumflex the ultima; the Second Aorist active Participle and the five active Imperatives, εἰπέ, ἔλθέ, εὐρέ, λαβέ, ἰδέ, *behold*, have the acute on the ultima; the Second Aorist middle Infinitive of verbs in ω has the acute on the penult.

As an example, the complete synopsis of the Second Aorist system of λείπω is given.

	ACTIVE		MIDDLE
Ind.	ἔλιπον	Ind.	ἐλιπόμην
Subj.	λίπω	Subj.	λίπωμαι
Opt.	λίποιμι	Opt.	λιποίμην
Imp.	λίπε	Imp.	λιποῦ
Inf.	λίπειν	Inf.	λιπέσθαι
Part.	λιπών	Part.	λιπόμενος

<sup>1</sup> In the active it means *make stop*, in the middle *cease*.

<sup>2</sup> In the active *frighten*, in the middle *be afraid*.

89. Several common verbs have Second Aorist systems formed and conjugated like those of μι verbs. A few of these synopses are given below, and should be thoroughly learned.

	αἰσχομαι, <i>be captured</i>	βαίνω, <i>go</i>	γινώσκω, <i>know</i>
Ind.	ἔαλων or ἤλων	ἔβην	ἔγνων
Subj.	αἰῶ	βῶ	γνώ
Opt.	αἰοίην	βαίην	γνοίην
Imp.	—	βῆθι	γνόθι
Inf.	αἰῶναι	βῆναι	γῶναι
Part.	αἰούς	βάς	γούς

NOTE. — ἔβην is conjugated like the First Aorist passive of a regular verb. ἔαλων and ἔγνων in the same way retain ω throughout.

90. Write the synopses of all the Second Aorists in 87.

91. Let the instructor form several original sentences in English from the words in 87, illustrating the grammatical principles of 56-85. Let these sentences be given to the class to write at sight.

## LESSON XII

### PARTICULAR CONDITIONS: SIMPLE AND CONTRARY TO FACT

92. There are two main classes of conditions, (1) those that refer to a single definite act, called Particular Conditions, and (2) those that refer to any one of a series of acts, called General Conditions. Example: *If he does this, he is punished*, where the condition refers to single, specific

occurrence. If this condition is put in the form *If he ever does this, he always is punished*, it becomes a general condition, because it refers to any one of a series of acts, and not to a specific one.

A general condition, then, in English, may usually be recognized by the word *ever, always, as often as*.

**93.** Particular Conditions are, for convenience, divided into four forms:

1. Simple.
2. Contrary to Fact (Non-Fact).
3. More Vivid Future.
4. Less Vivid Future (Vague Future).

**94. Simple Condition.**—In this form the protasis (or condition) simply states a present or past supposition, and does not imply anything as to its fulfilment. The protasis has *εἰ, if*, with the present or past Indicative, and any form of the verb may stand in the apodosis (or conclusion).

*εἰ ἔπραξε τοῦτο, καλῶς ἔσχεν, if he did this, it was well.*

*ἀλλ' εἰ δοκεῖ, πλέωμεν, but if it pleases you, let us sail.*

[H. 893: G. 1390: B. 602: Go. 647.]

**95. 1. Contrary to Fact Condition.**—When the protasis states a present or past supposition, implying that the condition is not or was not fulfilled, the secondary tenses of the Indicative are used in both protasis and apodosis. The apodosis has the adverb *ἄν*.

2. The Imperfect here refers to present time, and the Aorist to past time. The Pluperfect is not often used. The Imperfect may refer to an act as going on or repeated in past time.

καὶ ἂν ταῦτ' ἐποίει, εἰ ἑώρα ἡμᾶς, *and he would be doing this, if he saw us* (implying that he did not see us).

εἰ μὴ ταῦτα ἔπραξαν, οὐκ ἂν καλῶς ἔσχευ, *if they had not done this, it would not have been well* (implying that they did do this).

The first example is in present time and employs the Imperfect, while the second is past time and employs the Aorist. [H. 895: G. 1397: B. 606: Go. 649.]

96. In all conditions μή is the regular negative of the protasis, and οὐ of the apodosis.

97. The student will notice that the only way of distinguishing a past simple condition from a past contrary to fact is the ἂν of the conclusion, as both may employ the Aorist Indicative in both parts.

εἰ ταῦτα ἔπραξαν, καλῶς ἔσχευ, *if they did this, it was well* (simple).

εἰ ταῦτα ἔπραξαν, καλῶς ἂν ἔσχευ, *if they had done this, it would have been well* (contrary to fact).

Caution. — Observe how important the ἂν is; it may change the whole meaning of a sentence.

---

98. TRANSLATE:

1. If any one is brave, let us choose him general.
2. If Cyrus had restrained himself, he would have been king.
3. If he came, he marched through the city.
4. If the general had wished to go, the soldiers would have followed him.



5. If any one knows this, let him speak.
6. He would persuade me, if my father were not here.
7. If you had not come, we should now be proceeding against the king.
8. Change 1 to a contrary to fact condition, past time, and write in Greek.
9. Change 3 to a contrary to fact condition, past time, and write in Greek.

---

## LESSON XIII

### PARTICULAR CONDITIONS — VIVID AND LESS VIVID FUTURE

#### 99. Review 92 and 93.

**100. More Vivid Future Condition.** — When a supposed future case is stated distinctly and vividly (as in English, *if I shall go*, or *if I go*), the protasis has the Subjunctive with *ἐάν*, *ἤν*, or *ἄν*, and the apodosis has the Future Indicative or some other form expressing future time.

This form of condition, then, is recognized in English by the auxiliaries *shall* and *will*.

*ἐάν μὴ ἔλθῃς, ἔσται σοι κακά*, *if you will not come (or do not come), you will have trouble.* [H. 898, 899: G. 1403, 1405: B. 604: Go. 650.]

**101.** As a still more vivid form of expression, *εἰ* and the Future Indicative may be used in the protasis, instead of *ἐάν* and the Subjunctive.

**Caution.** — The auxiliary *shall* or *will* is not necessary to express future time in English. In the clause *if he*

*goes*, the English Present may be used in the sense of *will go*. Remember, then, that many vivid futures have *shall* or *will* only in the conclusion.

**102.** Ἐάν (sometimes contracted to ἦν and ἄν) is a compound of εἰ and ἄν.

**103 Less Vivid Future Conditions.** — 1. When a supposed future case is stated in a less distinct or vivid form (as in English, *if I should go*), the protasis has the Optative with εἰ, and the apodosis has the Optative with ἄν: εἰ πλούσιος γένοιτο, τίνας ἄν θέλοι; *if you should be rich, what would you want?*

2. The Future Optative is not used in this construction.

3. This form of condition is recognized in English by the auxiliaries *should* or *would* in both parts of the condition. [H. 900: G. 1408: B. 605: Go. 651.]

**104.** In suppositions, especially less vivid future and contrary to fact conditions, the condition is often left to be understood, or is expressed by the participle.

καὶ σὺν ὑμῖν μὲν ἂν εἶην τίμιος, ὑμῶν δὲ ἔρημος ὣν οὐκ ἂν ἱκανὸς εἶην, *and with you (i.e. if I should be with you) I should be in honor, but if I should be (literally, being) deprived of you, I should not be able, etc.* [H. 903, 969, d: G. 1413: B. 614: Go. 583.]

### 105. TRANSLATE:

1. If we take this height, those above the road<sup>1</sup> will not be able to attack us.
2. If he *will* come, what shall we do?<sup>2</sup>

<sup>1</sup> οἱ ὑπὲρ τῆς ὁδοῦ.

<sup>2</sup> Is it correct to use the Future Indicative?

3. Cyrus said, "If the king should fight within ten days, I would give you ten talents."
4. If he had come, we should have seen him.
5. I should hesitate to embark in those boats.
6. If this is so, I shall come.
7. If I should not be captured by the enemy, I should not be killed.
8. If we should have<sup>1</sup> our arms, we would use our valor also.<sup>2</sup>

---

## LESSON XIV

### GENERAL CONDITIONS

#### 106. Review 92 and 93.

107. The distinction of conditions as particular and general is observed in all suppositions, but there is no difference in the Greek form of expression except in the first form, or simple conditions. Simple general conditions are of two forms, present and past, according to the time.

108. **Present General Conditions.**—These are general suppositions of present time implying nothing as to the fulfilment. They employ the Subjunctive with *ἐάν*, *ἥν* or *ἄν* in the protasis, and the Present Indicative (or some other present form denoting repetition) in the apodosis: *ἐάν κλέψῃ, ἀλίσκεται*, *if he ever steals, he is caught*. [H. 894, 1: G. 1393, 1: B. 609: Co. 650.]

<sup>1</sup> Use the participle.

<sup>2</sup> *καί* before the word it emphasizes.

**109. Past General Conditions.** — These employ the Optative with *εἰ* in the protasis, and the Imperfect Indicative (or some form denoting past repetition) in the apodosis: *εἰ κλέψαι, ἡλίσκετο*, *if he ever stole, he was caught*. [H. 894, 2: G. 1393, 2: B. 610: Co. 651, (2).]

**110.** The Imperfect and Aorist Indicative are sometimes used with *ἄν* to express a customary action.

These forms, then, may be used in the conclusion of a past general condition. Do not confuse this use of *ἄν* with the Imperfect and the Aorist, with *ἄν* used in the conclusion of contrary to fact suppositions. [H. 894, α: G. 1296: B. 610, n. 1.]

# 111. SUMMARY OF GENERAL CONDITIONS

GENERAL CONDITIONS.	I. <i>Simple</i> .	a. Present time: <i>ἔάν</i> ( <i>ῥν, ᾶν</i> ) with Subjunctive in protasis; Present Indicative in apodosis.
		b. Past time: <i>εἰ</i> with Optative in protasis; Imperfect Indicative (or Imperfect with <i>ᾶν</i> , or Aorist with <i>ᾶν</i> ) in apodosis.
	II. <i>Contrary to Fact</i> .	Same as <i>Particular</i> (95).
	III. <i>More Vivid Future</i> .	Same as <i>Particular</i> (100).
	IV. <i>Less Vivid Future</i> .	Same as <i>Particular</i> (103).

## 112. TRANSLATE:

1. If he ever saw me, he ran away.
2. If his soldiers should march in good order, he would praise them.
3. The enemy always escape, if we attack them.

4. If you had ever come, he would have congratulated you.
5. If we ever saw her, she was always speaking about her husband's<sup>1</sup> bravery.
6. The barbarians always tried to attack us, if we crossed the river.
7. She used to march along with him.
8. If he ever promises you, he will not deceive you.
9. Cyrus is glad, if his soldiers never flee.

---

## LESSON XV

### RELATIVE CONDITIONS

**113.** A relative clause may have a conditional force, the relative pronoun or adverb implying the idea of *if*; for example, *whatever he does, I praise him* means *if he does anything, I praise him*; or, *wherever he goes, I see him* is equivalent to saying *if he goes anywhere, I see him*.

The relative word, when used with this conditional force, has an indefinite antecedent, that is, refers to an uncertain or undetermined person or thing, place or time.  
[H. 912: G. 1426, 1427: B. 620: Go. 616.]

**114.** 1. Conditional relative clauses have forms corresponding to the regular constructions used in conditional sentences, the only difference being that the relative word takes the place of *εἰ*, *if*.

2. The *άν* of *εάν* is attached to the relative word, whenever the Subjunctive is used; thus, *ὅς άν, ὁπόθεν άν*, etc.

<sup>1</sup> ἀντήρ.

With *δτε, ὁπότε, ἐπεί*, and *ἐπειδή*, *ἄν* is united and forms *δταν, ὁπόταν, ἐπήν* or *ἐπᾶν*, and *ἐπειδάν*. The negative, of course, is *μή*. Example: The sentence *whomever he sees, I know* is a relative clause with indefinite antecedent, and is a present general condition in form, therefore it is written in Greek just as a regular present general condition would be, the relative and *ἄν* taking the place of *ἐάν*: *ὅντινα ἄν ἴδῃ, γινώσκω*. [H. 913: G. 1428, 1429: B. 621-625: Co. 616, 617.]

115. The following summary will indicate the constructions used in all kinds of conditional relative sentences:

CONDITIONAL RELATIVE SENTENCES.	I. <i>Simple.</i>	Particular.	{ Relative and Indicative in protasis; any form in apodosis.
		General.	{ a. Present: Relative + <i>ἄν</i> and Subjunctive in protasis; Present Indicative in apodosis. b. Past: Relative and Optative in protasis; Imperfect Indicative in apodosis.
	II. <i>Contrary to Fact.</i>	Both particular and general.	{ Relative and past tenses of Indicative in protasis; <i>ἄν</i> and past tenses of Indicative in apodosis.
	III. <i>More Vivid Future.</i>	Both particular and general.	{ Relative + <i>ἄν</i> and Subjunctive in protasis; Future Indicative in apodosis.
	IV. <i>Less Vivid Future.</i>	Both particular and general.	{ Relative and Optative in protasis; <i>ἄν</i> and Optative in apodosis.

The above table is a summary of the moods and tenses used in all kinds of conditions. For all kinds of conditions, see H. 889-918: G. 1381-1437: B. 599-625: Co. 616, 617, 645-656.

116. The following are some of the more important meanings of the preposition *ἐπὶ* with its different cases :

<i>ἐπὶ</i>	with the Genitive.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Of place, <i>on</i> or <i>upon</i> : <i>ἐπὶ γῆς</i>, <i>on the earth</i> ; <i>ἐπὶ τοῦ εὐωνύμου</i>, <i>on the left wing</i>.</li> <li>b. With verbs of motion, <i>towards</i>, <i>in the direction of</i> : <i>ἐπὶ Ἰωνίας</i>, <i>in the direction of Ionia</i>.</li> <li>c. <i>In the time of</i> : <i>ἐφ' ἡμῶν</i>, <i>in our time</i>.</li> <li>d. Denoting distribution : <i>ἐπὶ τεττάρων</i>, <i>four deep</i> ; <i>ἐφ' ἑνός</i>, <i>in single file</i>.</li> </ul>
	with the Dative.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. Of place, <i>at</i>, <i>by</i>, <i>near</i> : <i>ἐπὶ θαλάττῃ</i>, <i>at the sea</i>.</li> <li>b. <i>In the power of</i> : <i>ἐπὶ τῷ ἀδελφῷ</i>, <i>in the power of his brother</i>.</li> </ul>
	with the Accusative.	<ul style="list-style-type: none"> <li>a. <i>To</i>, <i>against</i> (with verbs of motion) : <i>ἐπὶ βασιλείᾳ</i>, <i>against the great king</i>.</li> <li>b. <i>On</i>, <i>upon</i> (with verbs of motion) : <i>ἀναβαίνειν ἐφ' ἵππον</i>, <i>to mount on horseback</i>.</li> <li>c. <i>Extending over</i> (extent of space) : <i>ἐπὶ πολὺ</i>, <i>for a great distance</i>.</li> </ul>

### 117. TRANSLATE :

1. Wherever Cyrus would go, his soldiers would follow.
2. Whenever the Greeks came to a river, they were afraid that the enemy would attack them.
3. I know whatever he does.
4. She would have obeyed whatever he said.
5. Whenever they were drawn up three deep, they never conquered.
6. They will use whatever arrows they take.
7. Whenever anyone wishes to go away, he permits him.
8. Wherever he went, he was in the power of his father.

## LESSON XVI

## REVIEW

118. Review the principles stated in 92-116.

119. Learn thoroughly the meaning of the following words and memorize the principal parts of all the verbs:

- |                          |                 |
|--------------------------|-----------------|
| 1. ἀνέχω (act. and mid.) | 13. ἐπαινέω     |
| 2. γινώσκω               | 14. ὄπου        |
| 3. αἰρέω                 | 15. ἔαω         |
| 4. ἀλίσκομαι             | 16. ἀποφεύγω    |
| 5. δύναμαι               | 17. εὐδαιμονίζω |
| 6. ἄκρον (plur.)         | 18. διαβαίνω    |
| 7. τάλαντον              | 19. τάττω       |
| 8. δίδωμι                | 20. νικάω       |
| 9. ὀκνέω <sup>1</sup>    | 21. ἡττάομαι    |
| 10. ἀρετή                | 22. ἐξαπατάω    |
| 11. ἐμβαίνω              | 23. ἡδομαι      |
| 12. εὐτάκτως             | 24. ἀποδιδράσκω |
| 25. ὑπισχνέομαι          |                 |

120. Write out the synopsis of the second Aorist system of verbs in the above list.

121. Let the instructor form several sentences employing the words in 119 and embodying the most important of the grammatical principles in 92-116. These sentences should be written in Greek, at sight, by the class.

<sup>1</sup> Followed by the Infinitive, it means *hesitate*; by μή and the Subjunctive or Optative, *fear*.



## LESSON XVII

## BEFORE AND UNTIL

**122.** *Until* in its meaning may refer to either definite or indefinite time: 1. If we say, *I waited until they arrived, I did not go away until I had found it*, or, in general, when the reference is to a past action, we refer to a definite point of time. 2. If we say, *I shall not go away until I see him, I waited until he should find it*, or, in general, when the reference is to future time, we have an indefinite point of time, because the speaker implies that he does not know when the decisive event will occur.

*Until*, then, refers to past or definite time, or to future or indefinite time.

**123.** 1. *Until* is expressed in Greek by ἕως, ἔστε, ἄχρι, and μέχρι; πρίν also means *until*, but only after a negative sentence.

2. When *until* refers to definite time, it takes the Indicative mood, usually the Aorist tense: ἔμεινα ἕως ἀφίκοντο, *I waited until they arrived*. [H. 922: G. 1464: B. 619: Go. 631.]

**124.** When *until* refers to indefinite time, ἄν and the Subjunctive is used after a primary tense, and the Optative, without ἄν, after a secondary tense. The Aorist is the tense commonly used: μαχοῦμαι μέχρι ἄν τὴν πόλιν ἔλω, *I shall fight until I shall take the city*; ἔμεινα ἕως ἔλθοι, *I waited until he should come*. [H. 921: G. 1465: B. 626: Go. 631.]

**125.** Πρίν has two meanings.

1. After affirmative sentences it is naturally translated *before*; as, *He went away before it was light*.

2. After a negative sentence it is more naturally rendered by *until* than *before*; as, *He did not go away until it was light.*

126. When *πρὶν* means *before*, that is, after an affirmative sentence, it takes the Infinitive with subject Accusative: *ταῦτα δ' ἐποίησε πρὶν αὐτοὺς με ἰδεῖν, he did this before I saw them.* [H. 955: G. 1470: B. 645: Go. 644.]

127. When *πρὶν* means *until*, it employs the same construction as *ἕως*, as explained in 123 and 124. [H. 924: G. 1471, 2: B. 627: Go. 644.]

128. The following table summarizes the moods and tenses used after *πρὶν* and *ἕως*, *ἕστε*, *ἄχρι*, and *μέχρι*:

<i>πρὶν</i>	{	after Affirmative Sentences (meaning <i>before</i> ).	Infinitive.		
			I. Definite Time. Indicative.		
	{	after Negative Sentences (meaning <i>until</i> ).	II. Indefinite Time.	a. After Primary tense, <i>ἄν</i> and Subjunctive.	<i>ἕως</i> <i>ἕστε</i> <i>ἄχρι</i> <i>μέχρι</i>
				b. After Secondary tense, Optative without <i>ἄν</i> .	<i>until.</i>

(The negative is *μή* in all constructions.)

129. *ἕως* also means *while, as long as*, and in this sense takes the Indicative.

General references, H. 920-924: G. 1463-1474: B. 619, 626, 627, 645:  
Go. 631, 644.

### 130. TRANSLATE:

1. Let the truce remain until he comes.
2. He used to arm himself<sup>1</sup> carefully before he fought.

<sup>1</sup> What tense expresses *used to*?

3. She told the heralds to wait until she should be at leisure.
4. Do not do this until I come.
5. He did not set sail until he saw his mother.
6. He delayed until his soldiers should march through the middle of the city.
7. If we had not known this, we would not have waited until they arrived.
8. As long as he saw her, he waited at the door.
9. Let us proceed until we see him.

---

## LESSON XVIII

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE—SIMPLE SENTENCES

**131.** The words or thoughts of any person may be quoted either directly or indirectly. A direct quotation (i.e. direct discourse) is one which gives the exact words or thoughts of the original speaker or writer. An indirect quotation (i.e. indirect discourse) is one in which the original words or thoughts are stated in the words of another and conform to the construction of the sentence in which they are quoted.

The English sentence "I am present," when quoted indirectly, is stated "He says *that* he is present," or, when quoted after a past tense of the verb of saying, "He said *that* he was present." Indirect statement, then, is generally introduced in English by the word *that*.

**132.** An indirect statement in Greek may be introduced (1) by  $\delta\tau\iota$  or  $\acute{\omega}\varsigma$ , corresponding to the English *that*; (2) sometimes by the Infinitive, without  $\delta\tau\iota$  or  $\acute{\omega}\varsigma$ ; (3) sometimes also by the participle, without  $\delta\tau\iota$  or  $\acute{\omega}\varsigma$ . [H. 930: G. 1476: B. 670-673: G. 659, 578, 586.]

**133.** The following are the general principles of indirect discourse as applied to simple sentences when **ὅτι** and **ὥς** are used :

1. After primary tenses, the verb retains both the mood and tense of the direct discourse, no change being made except (when necessary) in the person of the verb.

Direct discourse : **πάρειμι**, *I am present.*

Indirect discourse : **λέγει ὅτι πάρεστιν**, *he says that he is present.* [H. 932, 1: G. 1481, 1: B. 672: Go. 624.]

2. After secondary tenses, each Indicative and each Subjunctive of the direct discourse may be changed to the same tense of the Optative, or retained in its original mood and tense.

**Exceptions.** — (1) The Imperfect and Pluperfect, having no tenses in the Optative, are generally retained in the Indicative. (2) Secondary tenses of the Indicative with **ἄν** are not changed to the Optative.

Direct discourse : **ἔρχεται ἐπὶ τὴν πόλιν**, *he is coming to the city.*

Indirect discourse : **ἔλεγεν ὅτι ἔρχοιτο ἐπὶ τὴν πόλιν**, *he said that he was coming to the city.*

Direct discourse : **νῦν μὲν ἔρχονται πρόσθεν δὲ ἂν ἦλθον**, *they are coming now, and would have come before.*

Indirect Discourse : **ἔλεγον ὥς νῦν μὲν ἔρχοιντο (or ἔρχονται) πρόσθεν δὲ ἂν ἦλθον**, *they said that they were coming now, and would have come before.*

Notice that the tense of the verb never changes.

[H. 932, 2, 933, 935: G. 1481, 2, 1482, 1493: B. 674, 675: Go. 659, a.]

**134.** In writing sentences in indirect discourse, let the student always think of what the direct discourse was, and

then change that direct discourse according to the principles stated in 133.

**135.** The negative in indirect discourse is generally the same as it was in the direct discourse. [H. 1022: G. 1486: B. 670, 3: Go. 486.]

**136.** The student should notice carefully the difference between indirect statements and indirect questions. As has been stated before (131), indirect statements may be recognized by the fact that the word *that* comes after the introductory verb. An indirect question, however, states indirectly a direct question, and has some interrogative word after the introductory verb instead of *that*.

*I know who is present* (indirect question).

*I know that he is present* (indirect statement).

*I heard where he went* (indirect question).

*I heard that he went* (indirect statement).

**137.** After a primary tense, the verb of an indirect question remains in the same mood and tense that was used in the direct question; after a secondary tense, it may remain the same, or change to the same tense of the Optative. [H. 930, 2: G. 1479: B. 673: Go. 661.]

*οἶδα ὅπου ἐστίν*, *I know where he is* (the direct question being *ποῦ ἐστίν*); *ἤκουσα ὅπως ἡ χώρα εἶη*, *I heard how large the country was* (the direct question being *πόσῃ ἡ χώρα ἐστίν*).

### 138. TRANSLATE :

1. Tissaphernes reported that Cyrus was marching against the king.
2. He said<sup>1</sup> that he would kill the horsemen who were burning<sup>2</sup> the country ahead.

<sup>1</sup> Do not use *φημί*.

<sup>2</sup> Use participle.

3. They deliberated how<sup>1</sup> they should attack him.
4. I knew that the king would not have done this.
5. I say that Cyrus marched inland with a large army.
6. He heard that the enemy would not fight for ten days.
7. We asked him who this sailor was.
8. They perceived that the enemy were in the camp.

---

## LESSON XIX

### INDIRECT DISCOURSE—INFINITIVE AND PARTICIPLE

#### Review 132.

**139.** 1. After verbs of Saying and Thinking, which introduce indirect discourse, the main verb is changed to the corresponding tense of the Infinitive, after both primary and secondary tenses.

**Exception.** — Of the common verbs meaning *to say*, **εἶπον** takes the **ὅτι** or **ὥς** construction with the Indicative or Optative; **λέγω**, in the active voice, generally takes **ὅτι** or **ὥς** and the Indicative or Optative, and in the passive voice the Infinitive; **φημί** regularly takes the Infinitive.

**εἶπον** and (generally) **λέγω**, therefore, are exceptions to 139.

2. If **ἄν** was used in the direct discourse, it is regularly retained with the Infinitive in the indirect.

Direct discourse: **προσέρχεται**, *he is approaching*.

Indirect discourse: **φημι αὐτὸν προσέρχεσθαι**, *I say that he is approaching*. [H. 946: G. 1522, 1523: B. 669: Go. 658.]

<sup>1</sup> What was the direct form ?

**140.** When the subject of the Infinitive is the same as the subject of the introductory verb it is not expressed. [H. 940: G. 895, 2: B. 646: Go. 571.]

**141.** As an exception to the principle stated in **135**, verbs of Hoping, Promising, and Swearing regularly have μή and the Infinitive instead of ού. [H. 1024: G. 1496: B. 549, 2: Go. 579, a.]

**142.** After many verbs the participle may be used in indirect discourse, each tense representing the corresponding tense of the direct form. The participle retains the αν of the direct form.

Such verbs are those that signify to See, Know, Hear, Learn, Perceive, Be Ignorant of, Remember, Forget, Show, Appear, Prove, Acknowledge, and ἀγγέλλω, *to announce*. To this class belong the phrases δηλός εἰμι and φανερός εἰμι, φανερός γίγνομαι, used personally.

NOTE. — Most of these verbs may also take the *δτι* or *ὡς* construction in indirect discourse. [H. 981, 982: G. 1588, 1589: B. 661: Go. 586.]

Direct discourse: προσέρχεται, *he is coming*.

Indirect discourse: ἀκούω αὐτὸν προσερχόμενον, *I hear that he is coming*. This may also be written ἀκούω *δτι* προσέρχεται.

Direct discourse: παρήσαν, *they were present*.

Indirect discourse: ἔγνων αὐτοὺς παρόντας, or ἔγνων *δτι* παρήσαν, *I knew that they were present*.

**143.** The phrases δηλός εἰμι, φανερός εἰμι, and φανερός γίγνομαι are used both personally and impersonally. When used personally (which is more common) the participle follows them; when used impersonally they take *δτι* or *ὡς*: Κῦρος δηλός ἦν τοῦτο βουλόμενος, *it was clear that*

*Cyrus wished this, or Cyrus evidently wished this* (literally, *Cyrus was evident wishing this*).

The student will notice that the construction commonly used in English is impersonal.

---

**144. TRANSLATE :**

1. He announced that his own friends were approaching.
2. On account of this he thought he would run off.
3. It was evident that he had a large army.
4. I saw that you were suffering harm, and were not able to retaliate.
5. They swore that they would never fight against their own friends.
6. He said (ἐφη) that they never betrayed their king.
7. The king's wife is said to have seen them.
8. Cyrus was evidently<sup>1</sup> in Cilicia.

---

**LESSON XX**

**INDIRECT DISCOURSE—COMPLEX SENTENCES**

**145.** A complex sentence is one consisting of a principal clause and one or more dependent clauses ; as "If he *comes*, I shall go" ; "we waited until we *saw* her." "The man whom I *saw* is a Greek." The dependent verbs are italicized.

**146.** When a complex sentence is indirectly quoted, its principal verb follows the rules stated in **133**, **139**, **141**, and **142**. Its dependent verb follows the following law :

<sup>1</sup> What is the Greek idiom?



After a primary tense, no change is made in the mood or tense of the dependent verb. After a secondary tense, no change may be made, or the dependent verb may change to the same tense of the Optative, except that dependent secondary tenses of the Indicative remain unchanged. When a Subjunctive becomes Optative, *ἄν* is dropped, *εἰάν* becoming *εἰ*.

Direct discourse: *ὃς παρῆν, ἐμὸς φίλος ἦν*, *the man who was present was a friend of mine.*

Indirect discourse: *ἔφη ὃς παρῆν φίλον εἶναι*, *he said that the man who was present was his friend.*

In this sentence *παρῆν* could not become Optative, because it is a secondary tense in the dependent clause.

Direct discourse: *ἔάν ἔλθῃ, αὐτὸν ὄψομαι*, *if he comes, I shall see him.*

Indirect discourse: *εἶπον ὅτι, εἰ ἔλθοι, αὐτὸν ὄψοίμην*, *I said that if he should come, I should see him.* Both *ἔλθῃ* and *ὄψομαι* might be unchanged. [H. 931, 932: G. 1497, 1, 2: B. 672-675: Go. 662.]

147. The principles stated in 146 apply also to any dependent clause after a secondary tense (even if the clause on which it depends is not quoted) that expresses indirectly the past thought of any speaker. [H. 937: G. 1502: B. 677.]

148. The student will notice the difference between "know *that*" and "know *how to*." If *that* introduces the clause following *know*, the construction is indirect discourse, and the verb of knowing takes the participle or the *ὅτι* or *ὥς* construction. If *how to* follows the word *know*, the construction is not indirect discourse. The Infinitive is then used.

*οἶδα αὐτὸν τοῦτο ποιοῦντα*, *I know that he is doing this.*

*οἶδα τοῦτο ποιῆσαι*, *I know how to do this.*

**γινώσκω**, when followed by the Infinitive, often means *judge, decide*. [H. 986: G. 1592, 2: B. 661, n. 3: Go. 588, c.]

**149.** The student should remember the following facts about the use of conditions in indirect discourse.

1. The protasis contains the dependent verb, and the apodosis the main verb.

2. A contrary to fact condition never changes its mood and tense after **ὅτι** or **ὥς**, because it employs a secondary tense in the protasis, and a secondary tense with **ἄν** in the apodosis.

3. The protasis of the vivid and less vivid future may be the same in indirect discourse; the apodosis, therefore, must be relied on to indicate the direct form of the condition

(a) **εἶπεν ὅτι, εἰ ἔλθοι, ἀναβήσοιτο.**

(b) **εἶπεν ὅτι, εἰ ἔλθοι, ἄν ἀναβαίη.**

Both are translated *he said that if he should come he would march inland*, and it is, therefore, impossible from the English sentence to tell what the direct form was. In Greek, however, we can easily see that (a) was vivid future in direct discourse, because the Future Optative is used in the conclusion, and that (b) was less vivid because **ἄν** is used in the conclusion.

**150.** In all indirect discourse sentences these three points should always be in mind:

1. First find the direct form of the sentence.

2. Remember that all changes are made to the Optative and not to the Subjunctive, as is the case with subordinate clauses in Latin.

3. Do not change the tense.

*Indirect discourse*, H. 928-937, 946, 981, 982: G. 1475-1502, 1522, 1523, 1588, 1589: B. 646, 661, 668-677: Go. 657-664.

## 151. TRANSLATE:

1. The sailor said that they would not set sail until the admiral arrived.
2. He says ( $\phi\eta\sigma\acute{\iota}$ ) that if he had done this he would have been caught.
3. He replied, "Let us delay until we see them."
4. He promised that he would not give them up until they should make a treaty.
5. They announced that they would follow him wherever he should lead.
6. He does not know how to use his arms.
7. He said that wherever the Greek went the enemy attacked them.
8. He knew that they would dread to embark on the boats which Cyrus might give.



## LESSON XXI

## REVIEW

152. Review the grammatical principles stated in 122-151.

153. The following synopsis of  $\sigma\acute{\iota}\delta\alpha$  should be learned. Review the conjugation of all its tenses. [491: 820.]

Perf.	$\sigma\acute{\iota}\delta\alpha$	Opt.	$\sigma\acute{\iota}\delta\epsilon\iota\eta\nu$
Plupf.	$\eta\delta\eta$ or $\eta\delta\epsilon\iota\nu$	Imp.	$\sigma\epsilon\theta\acute{\iota}$
Subj.	$\sigma\acute{\iota}\delta\omega$	Inf.	$\sigma\acute{\iota}\delta\epsilon\iota\nu\alpha\iota$
	Part.	$\sigma\acute{\iota}\delta\acute{\alpha}\varsigma$	

**154.** Learn the meaning of the following words. Memorize the principal parts of all the verbs, and write out a complete synopsis of the second aorist system of each verb that has one.

- |                   |                 |
|-------------------|-----------------|
| 1. ἐξοπλίζω       | 13. ἀντιποιέω   |
| 2. σχολάζω        | 14. προδίδωμι   |
| 3. ἀποπλέω        | 15. προσέρχομαι |
| 4. διατρίβω       | 16. ὀκνέω       |
| 5. σπένδω (mid.)  | 17. ἡγέομαι     |
| 6. σπονδή (plur.) | 18. ἀγγέλλω     |
| 7. ἡγεμών         | 19. κατακάω     |
| 8. ἱππεύς         | 20. βουλευόμαι  |
| 9. πῶς            | 21. αἰσθάνομαι  |
| 10. ναύαρχος      | 22. ἀκούω       |
| 11. δμνυμι        | 23. μανθάνω     |
| 12. πάσχω         | 24. οἶδα        |

**155.** Let the instructor form several sentences which employ the words in 154, and which embody the most important of the grammatical principles in 122-151. These sentences should be written in Greek, at sight, by the class.

## LESSON XXII

### THE INFINITIVE—RESULT CLAUSES

**156.** Review 78 and 79, 2.

**157.** The student should notice carefully the difference between a Purpose and a Result clause. A result clause expresses the result or outcome of the action of

a verb. Observe the difference as shown in these two examples :

*They shouted so that he might hear* (Purpose).

*They shouted so that he heard* (Result).

Some word or phrase like *so, such, in such a way*, etc., is often used in the sentence before the result clause to lead up to it, and to show that such a clause is to follow.

158. Result is generally expressed in Greek by ὥστε (sometimes ὡς) with the Accusative and Infinitive (negative μή), and the Indicative (negative οὐ). With the Infinitive, ὥστε expresses the result which the action of the main verb tends to produce, and with the Indicative, the result actually produced. This distinction, however, which is hardly perceptible in English, is often disregarded in Greek :

οὕτως ἐστὶ δεινὸς ὥστε δίκην μὴ δίδόναι, *he is clever enough not to be punished.*

οὕτως ἐστὶ δεινὸς ὥστε δίκην οὐ δίδωσιν, *he is so clever that he is not punished.*

[H. 953, 927: G. 1449, 1450: B. 595: Go. 566, δ, 639, α.]

159. Result may be expressed by a relative pronoun with the Indicative. The negative is οὐ. This occurs chiefly after negative clauses, or interrogatives implying a negative :

τίς οὕτω μαίνεται ὅστις οὐ βούλεται σοι φίλος εἶναι; (Xen. Anab. II, 5, 12.) *Who is so mad that he does not wish to become your friend?* [H. 910: G. 1447: B. 597: Go. 619.]

**160.** The Infinitive follows many adjectives that denote Ability, Fitness, Desert, Willingness. Some of the common adjectives are *δυνατός*, *able*; *δεινός*, *skillful*; *ἄξιος*, *worthy*; *ικανός*, *competent, able*; *ἔτοιμος*, *ready*.

*ἄνθρωπος τὰ μεγάλα πράττειν ικανός*, *a man capable of doing great things*. [H. 952: G. 1526: B. 641: Go. 565, a.]

**161.** The Infinitive with the neuter article becomes a verbal noun, being used in most of the constructions belonging to the different cases. This use of the Infinitive corresponds to the Gerund in Latin.

		LATIN
Nom.	τὸ μάχεσθαι or μάχεσθαι	pugnare
Gen.	τοῦ μάχεσθαι	pugnandi
Dat.	τῷ μάχεσθαι	pugnando
Acc.	τὸ μάχεσθαι or μάχεσθαι	pugnandum

Here are a few examples of this use of the Infinitive:

*εἰς τὸ διώκειν ὠρμήσαμεν*, *we set out in pursuit*.

*ἤρξαντο τοῦ διαβαίνειν*, *they began the crossing*.

*ἡ βασιλεία ἀρχὴ ἦν τῷ διεσπᾶσθαι τὰς δυνάμεις ἀσθενής*, *the country of the king was weak in the scattered condition of his forces*. [H. 959: G. 1541-1547: B. 639-640: Go. 574-575.]

**162.** After verbs and expressions denoting Hindrance or Freedom from anything, one may use (1) the simple Infinitive or (2) *τοῦ* and the Infinitive. As the Infinitive after verbs implying negation may take *μή* to strengthen the previous negation without otherwise affecting the sense, one may use a third and fourth construction: (3) *μή* and the Infinitive and (4) *τοῦ μή* and the Infinitive. The Accusative *τὸ μή* and the Infinitive may also be used.

<p> <b>εἰργεν αὐτοὺς μάχεσθαι</b>  <b>εἰργεν αὐτοὺς τοῦ μάχεσθαι</b>  <b>εἰργεν αὐτοὺς μὴ μάχεσθαι</b>  <b>εἰργεν αὐτοὺς τοῦ μὴ μάχεσθαι</b>  <b>εἰργεν αὐτοὺς τὸ μὴ μάχεσθαι</b> </p>	}	<p><i>He prevented them from fighting.</i></p>
--	---	--

[II. 963: G. 1549: B. 643: Go. 572-573.]

*Infinitive*, H. 938-964: G. 1516-1556: B. 632-647: Go. 562-579.

### 163. TRANSLATE:

1. Whenever he is skillful in speaking, I praise him.
2. The barbarians will never hinder us from crossing the bridge.
3. When he was a boy, he was worthy of being honored.
4. They fought so bravely that they did not taste of food.
5. He always prevented his men from capturing women.
6. We went away in such a way as to frighten the citizens.
7. Who would be so foolish as not to obey his general?
8. He accomplished this by being<sup>1</sup> brave.
9. Therefore we have come to save you.

## LESSON XXIII

### THE PARTICIPLE

164. The Participle has three uses:

1. It may qualify a noun, like an ordinary adjective.
2. It may define the circumstances under which the action of the principal verb takes place.

<sup>1</sup> ἐκ τοῦ and Infinitive.

3. It may be joined to a verb to supplement or complete its meaning, often having a force like that of the Infinitive.

165. When the Participle qualifies a noun, like an attributive adjective, it may often be translated in English by a relative clause, especially when it is preceded by the article.

τὸν βασιλεύοντα ἀδελφόν, *his brother, who is king.*

ἄνδρες οἱ τοῦτο ποιήσοντες, *men who will do this.* See 40.

166. In defining the circumstances of the action of the principal verb, the Participle may be translated in a variety of ways, according as it expresses Time, Cause, Manner, Means, Purpose, Condition, Concession, or Attendant Circumstance.

Time: ἀκούσας τοῦτο ἀπεκρίνατο, *when he heard this, he replied.*

Cause: ταῦτα ἐποίησε ἀπιέναι βουλόμενος, *he did this because he wished to go away.*

Purpose: συλλαμβάνει Κύρον ὡς ἀποκτενῶν, *he arrests Cyrus as if to put him to death.* See 79, 3.

Condition: νικῶντες οὐδένα ἂν κατακάνοιεν, *if they should conquer (literally, conquering), they would kill nobody (the negative is μή).*

Concession: ταῦτα πεποιηκὼς οὐκ ἀπέθανε, *although he had done the same things, he was not killed.* [H. 969, a-c: G. 1563, 1-8: B. 653, 1-8: Go. 583.]

**Remark.** — In writing Greek let the student endeavor to use the Participle as much as possible, as participles are much more common in Greek than they are in English.



**167.** The supplementary participle completes the idea expressed by a verb, by stating that to which its action relates. In this use it is very often similar to the object Infinitive. It is often used in this sense with verbs that signify to Begin, Continue, Cease, be Weary, be Pleased, Displeased, or Ashamed.

ἦρχον χαλεπαίνων, *I was the first to be angry.*  
παύσομαι λέγων, *I will cease talking.*

[H. 980, 981: G. 1580: B. 660: Go. 585, 6.]

**168.** When a circumstantial participle belongs to a substantive which has no grammatical connection with the main construction of the sentence, both the substantive and the participle are put in the Genitive. This is called the Genitive Absolute.

The Genitive Absolute may express any one of the ideas mentioned in 166.

τῶν Ἑλλήνων ταῦτα ποιούντων, οἱ βάρβαροι ἀπῆλθον,  
*while the Greeks were doing this, the barbarians went off.*

The student will notice that the Genitive Absolute may be used in the above example, because the word *Greeks* has nothing to do, grammatically, with the main clause *the barbarians went off*. [H. 970: G. 1568: B. 657: Go. 590.]

**169.** The use of the Participle with the verbs λανθάνω, *escape the notice of*, τυγχάνω, *happen*, and φθάνω, *anticipate*, requires careful attention.

The use of these verbs in Greek is very idiomatic and quite different from the English idiom. The translation will vary. The Participle generally contains the main

idea of the sentence, while an adverb or a phrase will usually best translate the main verb of the Greek sentence.

**λανθάνω** conveys the idea of *unobserved, secretly, unseen*, etc.

**τυγχάνω** the idea of *perchance, as it happened, as luck would have it*, etc.

**φθάνω** the idea of *first, beforehand*, etc.

Study these examples carefully:

**ἐτύγχανε παρών**, *as it happened he was present or he was present by chance* (literally, *he happened being present*).

**ἐλάνθανεν ἀπὼν**, *he went off without being seen, or he went off secretly* (literally, *he escaped notice going away*).

**ἐφθασαν ἡμᾶς τὰυτὰ ποιοῦντες**, *they did this before we did* (literally, *they anticipated us in doing this*). H. 984: G. 1586: B. 660, note: Go. 585, a.]

#### 170. TRANSLATE :

1. If we should cross the river, whom would they kill?
2. I shall never cease to pity you and deem happy those who march with the king.
3. Although he knows that the enemy are coming, he does not fear.
4. He went secretly and took the height.
5. He did this by chance, when Cyrus was speaking to his soldiers.
6. When he had read the letter, he blamed him.
7. They arrived at the wall before the enemy.
8. The king thinks that the Greeks are his, since he has them in his country.

*Participle*, H. 965-987: G. 1557-1593: B. 648-662: Go. 580-595.

## PART II

### NOTES ON CONNECTIVES

Compare the following examples of standard English and Greek prose, noticing especially the use of the connectives in the two languages:

(FROM LINCOLN'S GETTYSBURG ADDRESS)

"Fourscore and seven years ago our fathers brought forth upon this continent a new nation, conceived in liberty, and dedicated to the proposition that all men are created equal. Now we are engaged in a great civil war, testing whether that nation, or any nation so conceived and so dedicated, can long endure. We are met on a great battlefield of that war. We have come to dedicate a portion of that field as a final resting place for those who here gave their lives that that nation might live."

(THUCYDIDES, I, 46 ff.)

αἱ μὲν δὴ νῆες ἀφικνοῦνται ἐς τὴν Κέρκυραν, οἱ δὲ Κορίνθιοι, ἐπεὶ δὴ αὐτοῖς παρεσκεύαστο, ἔπλεον ἐπὶ τὴν Κέρκυραν ναυσὶ πεντήκοντα καὶ ἑκατόν. ἦσαν δὲ Ἑλλήων μὲν δέκα, Μεγαρέων δὲ δώδεκα καὶ Λευκαδίων δέκα, Ἀμπρακιωτῶν δὲ ἑπτὰ καὶ εἴκοσι καὶ Ἀνακτορίων μία, αὐτῶν δὲ Κορινθίων ἐνενηκόντα. στρατηγοὶ δὲ τούτων ἦσαν μὲν καὶ κατὰ πόλεις ἑκάστων, Κορινθίων δὲ Ξενοκλείδης ὁ Εὐθυκλέους πέμπτος αὐτός.

The student will readily notice the difference in style in the two languages. Simple, vigorous English generally abounds in short, disconnected sentences. The Greek language, however, marks very carefully the connection of sentences and clauses, and, by the free use of particles, indicates fine shades of contrast which can be expressed in English only by the stress of the voice.

Remember, then, generally to begin each clause in Greek with a connective or particle, and to mark, by the use of the proper particle, the contrasted words or expressions.

There follows a list of the common connectives and particles. In case of doubt as to the proper use of any one of them, consult a Greek-English lexicon to see the Greek usage. Those marked † cannot come first in the sentence. •

*And*: καί, †δέ, rarely enclitic †τέ.

*Also, even*: καί.

*But*: ἀλλά, †δέ (with or without a preceding †μέν).

*For*: †γάρ (καί γάρ and ἀλλά γάρ are often found at the beginning of a sentence, where we usually say *for* and *but*).

*Therefore*: τοῦν, †τοίνυν, διὰ τοῦτο, τοιγάρ, τοιγαροῦν.

*However*: †μέντοι.

*Yet, nevertheless*: ὅμως, καίτοι.

*At least, at any rate*: enclitic †γέ, †γοῦν. γέ is often attached to pronouns: ἔγωγε.

*Of course, then*: †δή. This particle has a great variety of meanings according to the connection in which it is used. It often corresponds to *of course, you know, you see, then, there*, etc. Very frequently it gives strength or definiteness to another particle: ἔνθα δή, *then indeed*.

*Not even:* οὐδέ.

*And not:* οὐδέ (when a negative clause precedes).

*Neither . . . nor:* οὔτε . . . οὔτε.

When μή is the proper negative, use it in place of οὐ in all compounds, as μήτε, etc.

The use of μέν and δέ should be carefully noticed. They are used to contrast words and clauses whose contrast in English is often indicated merely by the stress of the voice, as πρεσβύτερος μὲν Ἀρταξέρξης, νεώτερος δὲ Κύρος, "the *older* Artaxerxes, the *younger* Cyrus."

μέν does not connect its clause with what precedes, but *looks forward*, generally to a δέ which is to follow.

καὶ γάρ often occurs at the beginning of a sentence, and implies that something is omitted which may be easily supplied from the context: ἔνθα δὴ ἐγιγνώσκετο ὅτι ὑπόπεμπτos εἶη· καὶ γὰρ τῶν Τισσαφέρνηους τῆς οἰκείων παρηκολουθήκει πίστεως ἕνεκα, *then indeed it became known that he had been sent underhandedly; and (that was the case) for one of Tissaphernes' relatives followed to ensure his fidelity.*

In the expression ἀλλὰ γάρ something is easily inferred from the context between ἀλλά and γάρ.

## REMARKS ON TRANSLATION

One may be able to translate correctly an English sentence, word for word, into Greek, and yet not be able to write real Greek. The Greeks had a *natural* way of expressing their thoughts that is not like the English form of expression. The student in all of his study, then, should aim to understand this *spirit of the Greek language*, else he will never be able to write real Greek.

Take the English sentence "He made this promise." Translated, word for word, it would be ἐποίησε ταύτην τὴν ὑπόσχεσιν, but such a rendering would not be correct, for the Greeks would probably say, ταῦτα ὑπέσχετο, "he promised this." The student will notice, therefore, that the English language uses a large number of abstract words whose thought would be rendered in Greek by verbs. In writing Greek always strive to remove from the English sentence its form of expression, and think only of the fact or idea that is being related; then translate that idea into Greek as simply as possible.

Study the following examples :

After the *arrival* of the generals, ἐπεὶ οἱ στρατηγοὶ ἀφίκοντο. (Literally, "When the generals arrived.")

I remembered her personal *feelings*, ἐμνημόνην ἃ αὐτὴ ἐβούλετο. (Literally, "I remembered what she herself wished.")

They reported the *details* of the battle, ἡγγειλαν ὡς ἕκαστα ἐν τῇ μάχῃ ἐγένετο. (Literally, "They reported how each thing took place in the battle.")

## EXERCISES BASED ON THE ANABASIS

("Sec." refers to the Section of the Chapter)

### BOOK I — CHAPTER I

#### 171. Sec. 1-2.

1. Darius happened<sup>1</sup> to send for Cyrus.
2. Cyrus will collect all on the plain of Castolus.
3. Therefore he wishes to march inland.<sup>2</sup>
4. Tissaphernes, as it happens,<sup>3</sup> is not his friend.

#### 172. Sec. 3-5.

1. They said that he was plotting<sup>4</sup> against the king.
2. His mother does not wish Cyrus to be in the king's power.
3. He was arrested because he slandered<sup>5</sup> Tissaphernes.
4. Cyrus planned so that his friends could wage war.<sup>6</sup>

#### 173. Sec. 6-7.

1. He is making a levy in order to collect the very best men.
2. The king gave to Tissaphernes all<sup>7</sup> the cities, except Miletus.

<sup>1</sup> Use *τυγχάνω*: H. 984: G. 1586: B. 660, note: Go. 585, a. <sup>2</sup> *march inland*: the Greek word means *to go up*. <sup>3</sup> *as it happens*: see 169. <sup>4</sup> *he was plotting*: the direct discourse was *he is plotting*. Does the tense change? <sup>5</sup> *because he slandered*: use the participle. <sup>6</sup> *so that . . . war*: this is a result clause. H. 927: G. 1449-50: B. 595: Go. 566, b, 639, a. <sup>7</sup> H. 672: G. 979: B. 454, 455.

3. He became aware beforehand that Cyrus was collecting<sup>1</sup> an army.
4. He will kill those who plan<sup>2</sup> the same things.

## 174. Sec. 8-9.

1. Cyrus' mother thought that the king did not perceive the plot.
2. So that Cyrus waged war against Tissaphernes.
3. Cyrus met the fugitive and gave<sup>3</sup> him this money.
4. Another army will be secretly<sup>4</sup> supported among the Thracians.

## 175. Sec. 10-11.

1. Since Aristippus happened to be hard pressed, he asked Cyrus for gold.<sup>5</sup>
2. He requested<sup>6</sup> his guest to overcome his opponents.
3. He will not take the men until<sup>7</sup> he wages war with them.
4. The Pisidians will never trouble my land.

## BOOK I—CHAPTER II

## 176. Sec. 1-4.

1. Clearchus resolved to take as large an army as he had.
2. He promised us that he would not<sup>8</sup> stop until we<sup>9</sup> obeyed him.

<sup>1</sup> *that . . . collecting*: H. 982: G. 1588: B. 661: Go. 586. <sup>2</sup> *those who plan*: use the article and the participle. See 40. <sup>3</sup> *met and . . . gave = having met, gave*. Use the Aorist participle. <sup>4</sup> Use *λανθάνω*. <sup>5</sup> H. 724: G. 1069: B. 340: Go. 535. <sup>6</sup> Study in the vocabulary the various uses of *δέω*, and notice that it governs the Genitive. <sup>7</sup> Use *πρίν*: H. 924: G. 1471, 2: B. 627: Go. 644. <sup>8</sup> H. 1024: G. 1496: B. 549, 2: Go. 579, a. <sup>9</sup> The direct form was, *I will not stop until you obey me*.



3. He arrives with the men from Miletus.
4. Cyrus thought that he would proceed to the king<sup>1</sup> as quickly as he could.

**177. Sec. 5-8.**

1. Starting<sup>2</sup> from the city, he crossed this river.
2. Whenever we wish to hunt, we go into the park.
3. Therefore he marched through the middle<sup>3</sup> of Phrygia five days' journey.
4. Xerxes was said to have been conquered<sup>4</sup> and to have retreated from Greece.

**178. Sec. 9-12.**

1. Cyrus remained for five days at a river which was<sup>5</sup> twenty feet<sup>6</sup> wide.<sup>7</sup>
2. He is evidently troubled because the men ask for pay.
3. Cyrus paid a large amount of money to his army at that time.
4. After he had made a review, a woman came.

**179. Sec. 13-17.**

1. The Cilician woman requested Cyrus<sup>8</sup> to review his army.
2. Cyrus wishes each general to draw up his own men.

<sup>1</sup> *to the king*: H. 722, *a*: G. 1220, 8: B. 418. <sup>2</sup> This use of the Present Participle in English must not be imitated in Greek; use the Aorist, because he started before he crossed the river. <sup>3</sup> Predicate position: H. 671: G. 978: B. 454: Go. 556. <sup>4</sup> *to have been conquered*: use the participle. Where English uses two coördinate verbs with the same subject, Greek generally uses a participle and a verb. <sup>5</sup> *which was*: use the participle. <sup>6</sup> H. 729, *d*: G. 1094, 5: B. 352. <sup>7</sup> = *in width*: the Accusative of specification. <sup>8</sup> *See* takes the Genitive.

3. He will review the Greeks in his chariot as they march by.
4. There the Greeks halted<sup>1</sup> and presented arms.

180. Sec. 18-21.

1. The Cilician woman was pleased when she saw the Greeks going to their tents.
2. He handed her over to them to be sent<sup>2</sup> off by the quickest way.<sup>3</sup>
3. On the next day a messenger said that Cyrus had killed a man.
4. He perceives that they will go<sup>4</sup> upon the mountains.

181. Sec. 22-27.

1. When he had marched into this plain, he arrived at a city called Tarsus.<sup>5</sup>
2. These said that they had perished because<sup>6</sup> they could not find the road.
3. He said that his wife wished to persuade<sup>7</sup> him.
4. If we ever happen upon any gifts, we will<sup>8</sup> take them.

<sup>1</sup> The verb is intransitive here. Consult the vocabulary and learn what forms of ἵστημι are transitive and what intransitive. <sup>2</sup> Does the Infinitive express purpose in Greek? in Latin? in English? <sup>3</sup> An adverbial Accusative. <sup>4</sup> *that they will go*: H. 982: G. 1588: B. 661: Go. 586. <sup>5</sup> *called Tarsus*: compare Κύδνος ὄνομα, sec. 23. <sup>6</sup> *because . . . find*: does the participle express cause? <sup>7</sup> πείθω takes the accusative when it means *persuade* and the Dative when it means *obey*. <sup>8</sup> Wherein is the difference in the Greek form of expression between a vivid future and a present general condition?

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I AND II

182. Learn the meaning of the following words. They are all very important, and have occurred in Chapters I and II. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs, and, where indicated, notice the difference between the active and middle meanings.

1. αἰσθάνομαι	18. δύναμις	35. παρασκευάζω
2. ἀκούω	19. ἐλπίς	36. παύω (act. and mid.)
3. ἀποδείκνυμι	20. ἐξέτασις	37. πειράω
4. ἀποκτείνω	21. ἐξελαύνω	38. πλήρης
5. ἀποδίδωμι	22. ἔρχομαι	39. πορεύομαι
6. ἀπόλλυμι	23. εὐδαίμων	40. πούς
7. ἀτιμάζω	24. ἡγέομαι	41. πρίν
8. ἀφικνέομαι	25. ἴστημι	42. τάττω
9. ἀναβαίνω	26. ἀφίστημι	43. τελευτάω
10. διαβαίνω	27. καθίστημι	44. τελευτή
11. καταβαίνω	28. κινδυνεύω	45. τυγχάνω
12. βούλομαι	29. λανθάνω	46. ὑπισχνέομαι
13. ἐθέλω	30. λείπω	47. ὑποπτεύω
14. βουλεύω	31. μένω	48. χρήμα
15. ἐπιβουλεύω	32. νομίζω	49. ἀποχωρέω
16. γυνή	33. οὖν	50. ἐπιχωρέω
17. δύναμαι	34. παῖς	

183. Review carefully the following points of syntax :

1. The participle with τυγχάνω and λανθάνω. [H. 984 : G. 1586 : B. 660, n. : Go. 585, a.]

2. The construction used after φημί, λέγω, and εἶπον. [H. 946, δ : G. 1523 : B. 669 : Go. 658.]

3. The principle governing tenses in indirect discourse. [H. 932, 2 : G. 1487, 1494 : B. 670 : Go. 659.]

4. ἐπί with the Dative. See any lexicon.

5. Various meanings of the participle. [H. 969: G. 1563: B. 653, 1-8: Go. 583.]
6. Result clauses. [H. 927, 910: G. 1449, 1450, 1445: B. 595, 597: Go. 566, *b*, 619, 639, *a*.]
7. **ὅτι** or **ὥς** and the superlative. [H. 651: B. 428.]
8. Purpose clauses. [H. 881, 911, 951, 969, *c*: G. 1365, 1532, 1442, 1563, 4: B. 590-592, 653, 5: Go. 565, *a*, 615, 636, 638, 642.]
9. Position of **πᾶς**, **μέσος**, and **οὗτος**. [H. 671, 672, 673: G. 974, 978, 979: B. 454, 456: Go. 455, 553.]
10. Verbs that are followed by the participle in indirect discourse. [H. 981, 982: G. 1588: B. 661: Go. 586.]
11. When **αὐτός** means *the same*. [H. 679: G. 989, 2: B. 475: Go. 199.]
12. Verbs that are followed by the Infinitive in indirect discourse. [H. 946: G. 1522: B. 669: Go. 658.]
13. Case governed by **πολεμέω** and **δέω**. See lexicon.
14. Verbs governing two Accusatives. [H. 724: G. 1069: B. 340: Go. 534, 535.]
15. Construction following **πρίν**, *until*. [H. 924: G. 1471, 2: B. 627: Go. 644.]
16. The negative used after verbs of Hoping, Promising, and Swearing. [H. 1024: G. 1496: B. 549, 2: Go. 579, *a*.]
17. Duration of time. [H. 720: G. 1062: B. 338: Go. 538.]
18. Genitive of measure. [H. 729, *d*: G. 1094, 5: B. 352: Go. 506.]
19. Present general conditions. [H. 894, 1: G. 1393, 1: B. 609: Go. 650.]
20. Vivid future conditions. [H. 898: G. 1403: B. 604: Go. 650.]
21. **δηλός εἰμι** used personally. [H. 981: G. 1589: B. 634.]
22. Accusative of specification. [H. 718: G. 1058: B. 337: Go. 537.]
23. Verbs governing the Dative. [H. 764, 2: G. 1160: B. 376: Go. 520, *a*.]

184. Let the instructor form several sentences, employing the words in 182 and involving the constructions in 183. These sentences should be written by the students at sight.

### BOOK I — CHAPTER III

#### 185. Sec. 1-4.

1. I suspect<sup>1</sup> that the Greeks are not hired for this.
2. He was surprised when he saw that his soldiers were stoning him.<sup>2</sup>
3. Do not<sup>3</sup> wonder, Cyrus, that I take the darics.
4. I waged war against them that I might deprive the Greeks of their land.<sup>4</sup>

#### 186. Sec. 5-8.

1. No one says that I betrayed Cyrus and chose<sup>5</sup> the barbarians.
2. I will suffer<sup>6</sup> whatever I must do.
3. I think that<sup>7</sup> if I should be deprived of you I should not be in honor.
4. Cyrus, because he is troubled,<sup>8</sup> will send for Clearchus.

#### 187. Sec. 9-13.

1. If we do not follow Cyrus, he will not be our paymaster.
2. He feared that he would not inflict punishment<sup>9</sup> on them.

<sup>1</sup> Is *to suspect* a verb of thinking? <sup>2</sup> H. 683, a, 685: G. 993, 987: B. 470, 471: Go. 200. <sup>3</sup> What is the difference between the use of  $\mu\eta$  with the Present Imperative and  $\mu\eta$  with the Aorist Subjunctive? H. 874: G. 1346: B. 584: Go. 485. <sup>4</sup> H. 724: G. 1069: B. 340: Go. 535. <sup>5</sup> *betrayed and chose* = *having betrayed, chose*. Which tense of the participle? <sup>6</sup> H. 916: G. 1434: B. 620: Go. 616. <sup>7</sup> Which part of a condition is the main clause? <sup>8</sup> *because he is troubled*: use the participle. <sup>9</sup> *inflict punishment*:  $\delta\epsilon\iota\kappa\eta\nu$   $\epsilon\pi\iota\tau\epsilon\theta\eta\mu\iota$ , with Dative. H. 887: G. 1378.

3. We must consider<sup>1</sup> how we shall be<sup>2</sup> valuable friends.
4. When he had said this, he showed what the difficulty was.<sup>3</sup>

## 188. Sec. 14-17.

1. If he does not give us these, we shall send men to seize the heights.
2. Let us take the property before<sup>4</sup> Cyrus does.
3. I shall not obey whatever man you know.
4. We should hesitate<sup>5</sup> to follow whatever guide you would wish to choose.<sup>6</sup>

## 189. Sec. 18-21.

1. If we follow<sup>7</sup> as friends, we shall not use the mercenaries.
2. I think it best to march inland with Cyrus.
3. We replied that Abrocomas was<sup>8</sup> our enemy, and<sup>8</sup> was distant from the river.<sup>9</sup>
4. Cyrus promised that he would give each soldier a daric.

## BOOK I—CHAPTER IV

## 190. Sec. 1-4.

1. They march one day's journey, amounting to six parasangs, to the last city of Cilicia.

<sup>1</sup> *must consider*: use the verbal in *τέος*. <sup>2</sup> *how . . . be*: H. 885; G. 1372; B. 593; Go. 638, *a*. <sup>3</sup> What was the tense used in the direct question? <sup>4</sup> Use *πρότερον*. See H. 984; G. 1586; B. 660, note; Go. 585, *a*. <sup>5</sup> What are the two meanings of *ὀκνέω*? See the vocabulary. <sup>6</sup> How does *αἰτέω* differ in meaning in the active and middle voices? <sup>7</sup> *If we follow*: does the participle ever take the place of the protasis? H. 969, *d*; G. 1563, 5; B. 653, 6; Go. 583. <sup>8</sup> Omit. <sup>9</sup> Genitive of separation.

2. He will command<sup>1</sup> them from Ephesus.
3. He was said to be occupying these<sup>2</sup> walls.
4. It was not possible<sup>3</sup> to pass through the middle of the road.

191. Sec. 5-8.

1. We thought that Cyrus would send for the ships.
2. Cyrus remained there five days, and allowed them to sail off.
3. Let him understand<sup>4</sup> that he will be caught.
4. I know that he will rob them of their wives.<sup>5</sup>

192. Sec. 9-12.

1. They encamped at<sup>6</sup> a river which was thirty feet wide.
2. Belesys, the former king<sup>7</sup> of Syria, had a palace.
3. The soldiers said that they would follow Cyrus.
4. Although he knew this, he marched inland with<sup>8</sup> Cyrus.

193. Sec. 13-15.

1. They promised that they would follow Cyrus until he collected<sup>9</sup> his army.
2. He said this before<sup>10</sup> they were persuaded.
3. They ought<sup>11</sup> to cross the river.
4. If we go away, he will use us for whatever he wishes.

<sup>1</sup> H. 741: G. 1109: B. 356: Go. 510.  $\epsilon\gamma\omega$  is an exception to this rule.  
<sup>2</sup> Predicate position. <sup>3</sup>  $\epsilon\lambda\mu\iota$  in the third person singular often means *it is possible*. <sup>4</sup> The third person of the Imperative is used in exhortations. In exhortations of the first person, the Subjunctive is used. <sup>5</sup> H. 724: G. 1069: B. 340: Go. 535. <sup>6</sup> Study all the meanings of  $\epsilon\pi\iota$ , as given in the vocabulary.  
<sup>7</sup> *the former king* = *the one having ruled*: use the Aorist participle. <sup>8</sup> H. 801, 806: G. 1212, 1, b, 1217. <sup>9</sup> The direct discourse was *we will follow Cyrus until he collects*. H. 920-922: G. 1463-5: B. 626: Go. 631. <sup>10</sup>  $\pi\pi\lambda\upsilon$ , meaning *before*, takes the Infinitive. <sup>11</sup> *ought* is expressed by  $\delta\epsilon\iota$  or  $\chi\rho\eta$  and the Accusative and Infinitive.

## 194. Sec. 16-19.

1. We shall take care<sup>1</sup> that<sup>2</sup> you hear this.
2. They prayed that the whole<sup>3</sup> army might follow them.<sup>4</sup>
3. He went ahead that he might burn these boats.
4. The villages in which they remained were full of food.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS III AND IV

195. Learn the meanings of the following important words which occur in Chapters III and IV. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs, and, where indicated, notice the difference between the active and middle meanings.

- |                           |               |
|---------------------------|---------------|
| 1. ἀδικέω                 | 17. ἐπιτίθημι |
| 2. ἄξιος                  | 18. ἐπαινέω   |
| 3. ἀποκρίνομαι            | 19. ἐπί       |
| 4. ἀποπλέω                | 20. ἔπειτα    |
| 5. ἀρετή                  | 21. ἔρημος    |
| 6. ἀσφαλής                | 22. εὐχομαι   |
| 7. βάλλω                  | 23. ἐχθρός    |
| 8. γινώσκω                | 24. μέλω      |
| 9. δέδοικα                | 25. μέντοι    |
| 10. φοβέω (act. and mid.) | 26. μήν       |
| 11. ὀκνέω                 | 27. οἶμαι     |
| 12. διαβατός              | 28. οἴχομαι   |
| 13. διώκω                 | 29. ὁράω      |
| 14. δέω (act. and mid.)   | 30. ὀρμάω     |
| 15. ἔνεκα                 | 31. ὀρμέω     |
| 16. ἐντίθημι              | 32. πάσχω     |

<sup>1</sup> *We shall take care = It will be a care to us.*    <sup>2</sup> H. 885; G. 1372; B. 593; Co. 638, a.    <sup>3</sup> Predicate position.    <sup>4</sup> Refers to the subject of the verb *prayed*.



33. πείθω	39. στενός	45. φαίνω (act. and mid.)
34. πιστός	40. τείχος	46. φανερός
35. πράγμα	41. τιμάω	47. φθάνω
36. προδίδωμι	42. προτιμάω	48. χράομαι
37. σίτος	43. τιμωρέω	49. ψεύδω (act. and mid.)
38. σκηνέω	44. ὑποψία	50. ὠφέλεω

**196.** Review 183 and the following points of syntax :

1. Reflexive pronouns. [H. 683, *a*, 685: G. 993, 987: B. 470, 471: Go. 200.]
2. Tenses in indirect discourse. [H. 853-855: G. 1483: B. 670: Go. 659.]
3. Prohibitions. [H. 874: G. 1346: B. 584: Go. 485.]
4. Verbs taking two Accusatives. [H. 724: G. 1069: B. 340: Go. 534, *a*, 535.]
5. Vivid future relative conditions. [H. 916: G. 1434: B. 621-625: Go. 616, 617.]
6. Moods after verbs of Fearing. [H. 887: G. 1378: B. 594: Go. 610, 611.]
7. Construction used with φθάνω. [H. 984: G. 1586: B. 660, *n.*: Go. 585, *a*.]
8. Use of the participle for the protasis of a condition. [H. 969, *d*: G. 1563, 5: B. 653, 6: Go. 583.]
9. The use of the third person of the Imperative.
10. μετά with the Genitive.
11. *Until* and *before*. Sec. 122-129.
12. Ways of expressing *ought*.
13. ὅπως and the Future Indicative. [H. 885: G. 1372: B. 593: Go. 638, *a*.]
14. Position of the demonstrative pronouns. [H. 673: G. 974: B. 456: Go. 553.]

**197.** Let the instructor form several sentences, employing the words in 195 and involving the constructions in 196. These sentences should be written by the students at sight.

## BOOK I—CHAPTER V

## 198. Sec. 1-4.

1. In this plain were ostriches of all kinds.
2. Whenever they ran forward, the horsemen did the same.<sup>1</sup>
3. It is possible to use the wings.
4. Whenever the horsemen pursue<sup>2</sup> them, they quickly stop.<sup>3</sup>

## 199. Sec. 5-8.

1. All the inhabitants used to live<sup>4</sup> by making<sup>5</sup> millstones.
2. Since they could not buy grain, they ate flesh.
3. On one occasion<sup>6</sup> Cyrus thought that they worked slowly.
4. Some, wearing<sup>7</sup> tunics, ran into the mud.

## 200. Sec. 9-11.

1. Cyrus clearly<sup>8</sup> thought that he<sup>9</sup> would fight the king.
2. One could see<sup>10</sup> that the kingdom was weak in its forces.
3. They crossed the river in such a way that the water did not touch<sup>11</sup> them.
4. While Clearchus was inflicting<sup>12</sup> blows, the soldiers were angry.

<sup>1</sup> αὐτοῖς following the article. <sup>2</sup> Whenever . . . pursue: a present general condition. <sup>3</sup> How does παύω differ in meaning in the active and middle voices? <sup>4</sup> used to live: what tense denotes customary action? <sup>5</sup> Use the participle. <sup>6</sup> On one occasion: use ποτέ. <sup>7</sup> ἔχων. <sup>8</sup> H. 981: G. 1589: B. 634. <sup>9</sup> The subject of the Infinitive in indirect discourse is omitted when it is the same as that of the main verb. <sup>10</sup> One could see = *it was possible to see*. <sup>11</sup> in such a way . . . touch: a result clause. <sup>12</sup> while . . . inflicting: use the Genitive absolute.

## 201. Sec. 12-17.

1. On the same day one of the soldiers came to split<sup>1</sup> wood.
2. The Thracians were<sup>2</sup> thoroughly frightened, and ran to their own army.
3. Proxenus chanced to speak lightly of their<sup>3</sup> suffering.
4. Consider that the barbarians will be more hostile to us than the enemy are.

## BOOK I — CHAPTER VI

## 202. Sec. 1-4.

1. He said that if<sup>4</sup> he should seize the horsemen he would plot against Cyrus.
2. We prevented them from seeing<sup>5</sup> the king.
3. They thought that a trusty man had this letter.
4. Cyrus arrested<sup>6</sup> Orontas and called together the Persians.

## 203. Sec. 5-7.

1. It is right to council with you about Orontas.
2. Afterwards I brought<sup>7</sup> it about that he gave me pledges.
3. Did<sup>8</sup> you not come to the altar and acknowledge this?
4. I said that they repented.<sup>9</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Review all the ways of expressing purpose. <sup>2</sup> *were thoroughly frightened and ran* = *being thoroughly frightened, ran*. <sup>3</sup> αὐτῶν in the predicate position. A possessive Genitive of a reflexive pronoun takes the attributive position. <sup>4</sup> *if* . . . *Cyrus* : first write out the condition as it was in direct discourse. <sup>5</sup> *from seeing* : for the various forms of expression, see H. 963 : G. 1549 : B. 643 : Go. 572, 573. <sup>6</sup> *arrested and called* = *having arrested, called* : use the Aorist participle. <sup>7</sup> Cf. ἐποίησα ὥστε δοῦναι. <sup>8</sup> H. 1015 : G. 1603 : B. 572 : Go. 668. <sup>9</sup> μεταμέλει is an impersonal verb, and takes the Dative case.

**204. Sec. 8-II.**

1. If I should not do wrong, you would not be a friend to me.
2. I have leisure to benefit<sup>1</sup> my friends.
3. At the command of<sup>2</sup> Cyrus, they led him to death.
4. They conjectured<sup>3</sup> that he had died.

**REVIEW OF CHAPTERS V AND VI**

**205.** Learn the meaning of the following important words which occur in Chapters V and VI. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs, and, where indicated, notice the difference between the active and middle meanings.

- |              |                          |
|--------------|--------------------------|
| 1. ἀποθνήσκω | 17. ἴημι (act. and mid.) |
| 2. ἄρχω      | 18. ἱππεύς               |
| 3. ἀσθενής   | 19. ἰσχυρῶς              |
| 4. εἰσάγω    | 20. κατακαίνω            |
| 5. ἐξάγω     | 21. κάω                  |
| 6. γίγνομαι  | 22. κατακάω              |
| 7. γνώμη     | 23. προκατακάω           |
| 8. διά       | 24. κραυγή               |
| 9. διατρίβω  | 25. κρίνω                |
| 10. ἐσθίω    | 26. κωλύω                |
| 11. ἔτοιμος  | 27. νοῦς                 |
| 12. εὐθύς    | 28. ὀργίζομαι            |
| 13. ζάω      | 29. οὔν                  |
| 14. ἡδύς     | 30. παντοῖος             |
| 15. θηρίον   | 31. πλῆθος               |
| 16. θηρεύω   | 32. εἶποιέω              |

<sup>1</sup> Use εὖ ποιέω with the Accusative.    <sup>2</sup> *At the command of:* use the participle. Is the Genitive absolute permissible?    <sup>3</sup> This is a verb of thinking.

33. κακῶς ποιέω	42. τρέχω
34. ποτέ	43. προτρέχω
35. πράττω	44. ὑδωρ
36. πρόειμι	45. ὕστερος
37. πυνθάνομα	46. φράζω
38. σχολή	47. χείρ
39. σχολαῖος	48. χρήσιμος
40. σχολαίως	49. ὠνέομαι
41. ταχύ	50. ὠφέλιμος

**206.** Review the following points of syntax:

1. Present and past general conditions. [H. 894, 914, B.: G. 1393, 1, 2, 1431, 1, 2: B. 609, 610: Go. 650, 651, (2).]
2. Verbs which take the participle in indirect discourse. [H. 981, 982: G. 1588: B. 661: Go. 586.]
3. Result clauses. [H. 927: G. 1449, 1450: B. 595, 597: Go. 566, 567, 619, 639, a.]
4. Genitive absolute. [H. 970: G. 1568: B. 657: Go. 590.]
5. Construction after verbs of Preventing. [H. 963: G. 1549: B. 643: Go. 572, 573.]
6. Interrogative particles. [H. 1015: G. 1603: B. 572: Go. 668.]

**207.** Let the instructor form several sentences, employing the words in **205** and involving the constructions in **206**. These sentences should be written by the students at sight.

## BOOK I—CHAPTER VII

**208.** Sec. I—4.

1. On the following dawn, the king came to fight.
2. He planned how he would encourage<sup>1</sup> his men.

<sup>1</sup> *how . . . encourage*: the direct question was *how can I encourage?*  
[H. 872: G. 1327: B. 577: Go. 471.]

3. See to it that<sup>1</sup> you are braver than the barbarians.
4. I will make many choose<sup>2</sup> not to go home.

209. Sec. 5-9.

1. Some say that you do this because you are<sup>3</sup> in danger.
2. I say that you can not<sup>4</sup> pay all<sup>5</sup> you wish.
3. I fear that he will not give<sup>6</sup> a golden crown to each man.
4. What shall we have, if we go away?

210. Sec. 10-15.

1. The number was said to be one hundred thousand.<sup>7</sup>
2. They arrived seven days after the battle.<sup>8</sup>
3. Deserters before the battle were captured by the enemy.<sup>9</sup>
4. We thought that the king would fight at<sup>10</sup> the walls.

211. Sec. 16-20.

1. Cyrus learned that the king was marching forward and was inside the ditches.
2. If the king does not fight within ten days,<sup>11</sup> I will give you the money.
3. They promised that they would not<sup>12</sup> do this.
4. Cyrus thought<sup>13</sup> he would sit in his chariot.

<sup>1</sup> See to it that: H. 886: G. 1352-3: B. 583, n. 3: Go. 638, b. <sup>2</sup> make many choose: cf. πολλοὺς ποιήσιν . . . ἐλίσσθαι. <sup>3</sup> because you are: διὰ τὸ εἶναι. <sup>4</sup> that you can not: φημί is followed by the Accusative and Infinitive; εἶπον, and λέγω in the Active, by the ὅτι or ὡς construction. <sup>5</sup> ὅσα. <sup>6</sup> that . . . give: H. 887: G. 1378: B. 594: Go. 610, 611. <sup>7</sup> What is used in the text? <sup>8</sup> seven . . . : battle: cf. ὑστέρησε τῆς μάχης ἡμέραις πέντε. H. 781: G. 1184: B. 388: Go. 526. <sup>9</sup> by the enemy: Genitive with ὑπό. <sup>10</sup> ἐπὶ: see the vocabulary for the proper case. <sup>11</sup> within ten days: the Genitive expresses the time Within Which; the Dative, the time When; and the Accusative, the time How Long. <sup>12</sup> H. 1024: G. 1496: B. 549, 2: Go. 579, a. <sup>13</sup> δοκέω with the Dative.

## BOOK I—CHAPTER VIII

## 212. Sec. 1-7.

1. He intended to halt, when a man appeared,<sup>1</sup> riding at full speed.
2. They thought that the king would attack them.<sup>2</sup>
3. After him, Proxenos occupied the left wing.
4. All except Cyrus did not have bare heads.

## 213. Sec. 8-12.

1. And then the whole army came into view.
2. In the afternoon, the enemy appeared.
3. They cut down whomever they came upon.<sup>3</sup>
4. Cyrus was deceived, however, in what<sup>4</sup> he told the Greeks.

## 214. Sec. 13-17.

1. Although he saw<sup>5</sup> that the king occupied the center, he did not do this.
2. I will take care<sup>6</sup> that we are not surrounded.
3. We asked him if the omens were favorable.<sup>7</sup>
4. When he heard<sup>8</sup> the watchword passing through the ranks, he said, "Well,<sup>9</sup> let it be this."

## 215. Sec. 18-22.

1. Everybody shouted, so as to frighten<sup>10</sup> the horses.

<sup>1</sup> Note the difference of meaning in the active and middle. <sup>2</sup> An indirect reflexive. H. 683, *a*, 685: G. 993, 987: B. 472: Go. 200. <sup>3</sup> *whomever . . . upon*: past general condition. For the case, see H. 775: G. 1179: B. 394. <sup>4</sup> Accusative of specification. <sup>5</sup> *Although he saw*: the participle may denote concession. <sup>6</sup> *I will take care = it will be a care to me*. <sup>7</sup> The direct question was *Are the omens favorable?* <sup>8</sup> H. 742: G. 1102: B. 356: Go. 510, 511. <sup>9</sup> *ἀλλά*. <sup>10</sup> *ποιέω φόβον* and Dative.

2. Whenever the chariots rushed through the Greeks, no one suffered any harm.<sup>1</sup>
3. Cyrus knew that the Greeks were<sup>2</sup> victorious over those opposite them.
4. They thought they<sup>3</sup> would perceive this.

**216. Sec. 23-29.**

1. Cyrus feared that the barbarians would march to meet him.<sup>4</sup>
2. When he saw the king, Cyrus could not restrain himself.
3. Ktesias, the surgeon, will tell you how many<sup>5</sup> were killed.<sup>6</sup>
4. He is said to have fallen from his horse.

**REVIEW OF CHAPTERS VII AND VIII**

**217.** Learn the meaning of the following important words which occur in Chapters VII and VIII. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs, and, where indicated, notice the difference between the active and middle meanings.

1. αἰσχύνω (act. and mid.)	7. βάθος
2. ἀντίος	8. βαθύς
3. ἀποθνήσκω	9. βοάω
4. ἄρμα	10. δόρυ
5. αὐτομολέω	11. ἐγγύς
6. αὐτόμολος	12. ἔθνος

<sup>1</sup> any harm: οὐδέν. Do two negatives in Greek make an affirmative?

<sup>2</sup> H. 981, 982: G. 1588: B. 661: Go. 586. <sup>3</sup> May this be omitted?

<sup>4</sup> to meet him: ἀντίος. <sup>5</sup> how many: ὅποσοι. <sup>6</sup> ἀποθνήσκω is often used as the passive of ἀποκτείνω.



13. ἕκαστος	26. θέω	38. ὀπισθεν
14. ἐκατέρωθεν	27. θόρυβος	39. παῖω
15. ἐκατέρωσε	28. ἱκανός	40. πάροδος
16. ἐκάτερος	29. καταφανής	41. περιπίπτω
17. ἐλευθερία	30. κεφαλὴ	42. πίπτω
18. ἔμπροσθεν	31. κρατέω	43. πλήν
19. ἐντυγχάνω	32. κτάομαι	44. σπουδῇ
20. ἐπιπίπτω	33. μιμνήσκω (act. and mid.)	45. τάξις
21. ἐρωτάω		46. τάφρος
22. ἔτι	34. νικάω	47. τόξευμα
23. εὖρος	35. οἶκαδε	48. τοξεύω
24. ἦκω	36. οἴκοι	49. ὑποζύγιον
25. ἡνίκα	37. ὁμως	50. χρήζω

218. Review the following points of syntax :

1. Potential Optative. [H. 872: G. 1327: B. 563: Go. 480.]
2. ὅπως with the Future Indicative in Commands. [H. 886: G. 1352-1353: B. 583, n. 3: Go. 638, δ.]
3. Construction after φημί, εἶπον, and λέγω. [H. 946, δ: G. 1523: B. 669: Go. 658.]
4. Construction after verbs of Fearing. [H. 887: G. 1378: B. 594: Go. 610, 611.]
5. ὑπό and the Genitive [H. 808, 1, δ: G. 1219, δ.]
6. How is time Within Which expressed? time When? time How Long? [H. 759, 782, 720: G. 1136, 1192, 1062: B. 338, 359, 385: Go. 538, 515, 527, α.]
7. What verbs take μή and the Infinitive? [H. 1024: G. 1496: B. 549, 2: Go. 579, α.]
8. Indirect reflexives. [H. 683, α, 685: G. 993, 987: B. 472: Go. 200.]
9. Compound verbs which take the Dative. [H. 775: G. 1179: B. 394.]
10. The Accusative of specification. [H. 718: G. 1058: B. 337: Go. 537.]

11. Various meanings of the participle. [H. 969, *a-e*: G. 1563, 1-8: B. 653, 1-8: Go. 583.]

12. Verbs followed by the Genitive. [H. 742: G. 1102: B. 356: Go. 510, 511.]

13. Indirect Questions. [H. 932, 1 and 2: G. 1479, 1481: B. 673: Go. 661.]

219. Let the instructor form several sentences, employing the words in 217 and involving the constructions in 218. These sentences should be written by the students at sight.

## BOOK I—CHAPTER IX

### 220. Sec. 1-6.

1. Cyrus was acknowledged to be worthy<sup>1</sup> to rule.
2. When he was a boy, he was the best of all in every respect.<sup>2</sup>
3. One<sup>3</sup> could learn<sup>4</sup> how to rule and to be ruled.
4. Once a bear rushed upon Cyrus and dragged him off his horse.

### 221. Sec. 7-13.

1. If he ever promised<sup>5</sup> anybody<sup>6</sup> anything, he considered it of the greatest importance<sup>7</sup> not to prove false.
2. Therefore all the cities feared Tissaphernes and chose Cyrus.

<sup>1</sup> H. 952: G. 1526: B. 641: Go. 565, *a*.    <sup>2</sup> Accusative of specification.  
<sup>3</sup> *τις*.    <sup>4</sup> *could learn*: H. 872: G. 1327: B. 563: Go. 480. *μαρτάνα* followed by the participle means *I learn that*, etc.; by the Infinitive, *I learn how to*, etc.    <sup>5</sup> *If . . . promised*: this is a past general condition. Review 106-111, 113-115.    <sup>6</sup> Dative of indirect object.    <sup>7</sup> *considered . . . importance*: *περὶ πλείστον ποῦς*.

3. He prayed to live<sup>1</sup> until he should overcome the men who did him harm.
4. He allowed rascals<sup>2</sup> to be deprived of their hands.

222. Sec. 14-19.

1. Brave men, however,<sup>3</sup> he used to honor.
2. Wherever<sup>4</sup> any one thought Cyrus would notice him, he evidently<sup>5</sup> wished to incur danger.
3. He employed<sup>6</sup> just generals.
4. If he ever saw that a man was just, he gave him more.

223. Sec. 20-26.

1. Cyrus thought that his friends needed<sup>7</sup> as<sup>8</sup> many things as they saw.
2. They say that many sent<sup>9</sup> him gifts.
3. He used to surpass his friends in thoughtfulness.
4. The bearer said that Cyrus wished<sup>10</sup> you to take a taste<sup>11</sup> of these.

224. Sec. 27-31.

1. He procured fodder on account of having<sup>12</sup> many friends.
2. If many were ever<sup>13</sup> likely to see him, he honored his friends.
3. Cyrus thought that this man was faithful to him.<sup>14</sup>
4. After his death,<sup>15</sup> Ariaeus fled.

<sup>1</sup> See 122, 123, 124. <sup>2</sup> *κακοῦργος*. <sup>3</sup> *γὰρ μέντοι*. <sup>4</sup> *οπου*. This is a past general condition. <sup>5</sup> Use *δηλος* or *φανερὸς εἰμι*; H. 981: G. 1589: B. 634. <sup>6</sup> *χράσμαι*. What case follows it? <sup>7</sup> *δέομαι* takes the Genitive. <sup>8</sup> *as many as*: *ὅσος*. <sup>9</sup> In all indirect discourse constructions be sure to find the tense of the direct statement. Here the direct form was *many sent*. <sup>10</sup> The direct form was *wishes*. <sup>11</sup> *take a taste*: Aorist. <sup>12</sup> *on . . . having*: *διὰ τὸ* and Infinitive. <sup>13</sup> H. 846: G. 1254: B. 533: Go. 570, *δ*. <sup>14</sup> This refers to Cyrus. What kind of a reflexive pronoun is it? <sup>15</sup> *After his death*: Genitive absolute.

## BOOK I — CHAPTER X

## 225. Sec. 1-6.

1. The king with his men fled through his own<sup>1</sup> camp.
2. The king pursued them as if he was victorious in every way.
3. Tissaphernes planned whether he should go<sup>2</sup> ahead in pursuit or collect his own men.
4. He was evidently making preparations.

## 226. Sec. 7-12.

1. The Greeks struck Tissaphernes' men as they charged through.
2. The king is afraid that the Greeks will put<sup>3</sup> the river in their rear.<sup>4</sup>
3. The king then<sup>5</sup> also<sup>6</sup> saw that the Greeks were changing into the same formation.
4. So that the Greeks did not know what would take place.<sup>7</sup>

## 227. Sec. 13-19.

1. He halted<sup>8</sup> his army and saw that they were fleeing.
2. He rode ahead to seize<sup>9</sup> some point.<sup>10</sup>
3. They prepared this wine that they might distribute it among their friends.<sup>11</sup>
4. It was night before the king appeared.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *his own*: the possessive Genitive of the reflexive pronouns is put regularly in the attribute position. <sup>2</sup> *whither . . . go*: the direct question was a dubitative Subjunctive, *Shall I go*? <sup>3</sup> *that . . . put*: H. 887: G. 1378: B. 594: Go. 610, 611. <sup>4</sup> *put . . . rear*: cf. ποιήσασθαι ὀπισθεν τὸν ποταμόν. <sup>5</sup> *δη*. <sup>6</sup> *καί* placed before the word it emphasizes. <sup>7</sup> *what . . . place*: what tense of the participle? <sup>8</sup> Consult the lexicon to see what forms of ἵστημι are transitive and what intransitive. <sup>9</sup> *to seize*: how many ways are there of expressing this idea? <sup>10</sup> *some point*: τλ. <sup>11</sup> Dative. <sup>12</sup> πρὶν, meaning *before*, takes the Infinitive. See 125, 126, 127.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS IX AND X

228. Learn the following important words which occur in Chapters IX and X. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs, and, where indicated, notice the difference between the active and middle meanings.

- |                            |                            |
|----------------------------|----------------------------|
| 1. αἰρέω (act. and mid.)   | 26. φιλοκερδέω             |
| 2. αἰσχροῦς                | 27. λόφος                  |
| 3. ἄριστον                 | 28. οἶχομαι                |
| 4. ἀνάριστος               | 29. ὁμολογέω               |
| 5. ἀναπαύω (act. and mid.) | 30. ὀφθαλμός               |
| 6. αὖθις                   | 31. παῖς                   |
| 7. βασιλικός               | 32. παιδεύω                |
| 8. βούλομαι                | 33. πείρα                  |
| 9. ἐθέλω                   | 34. πειράω                 |
| 10. γέω (act. and mid.)    | 35. πλουτέω                |
| 11. διαδίδωμι              | 36. πλούσιος               |
| 12. δέχομαι                | 37. πλησίος                |
| 13. δηλόω                  | 38. ποτός                  |
| 14. δοῦλος                 | 39. πολλάκις               |
| 15. ἔνθα                   | 40. προχωρέω               |
| 16. ἔπειτα                 | 41. πρέσβυς                |
| 17. εὖνους                 | 42. σκοπέω                 |
| 18. εὖχομαι                | 43. σπένδω (act. and mid.) |
| 19. εὐχή                   | 44. σπονδή                 |
| 20. ἤδη                    | 45. στέρομαι               |
| 21. θεάομαι                | 46. συντίθημι              |
| 22. κατακόπτω              | 47. σάζω                   |
| 23. κρίνω                  | 48. σφόδρα                 |
| 24. κέρδος                 | 49. ὑπηρετέω               |
| 25. κερδαλέος              | 50. ὑπηρέτης               |

**229.** Review the following points of syntax :

1. Infinitive with adjectives. [H. 952: G. 1526: B. 641: Go. 565, *a.*]
2. Present and past general conditions. See 106–111.
3. *Until* and *before*. See 122–129.
4. **δηλός εἰμι** and **φανερὸς εἰμι**. [H. 981: G. 1589: B. 634.]
5. What case follows **δέω**?
6. Use of the tenses in indirect discourse. [H. 853–855: G. 1483: B. 670: Go. 659.]
7. Use of **μέλλω**. [H. 846: G. 1254: B. 533: Go. 570, *b.*]
8. Construction after verbs of Fearing. [H. 887: G. 1378: B. 594: Go. 610, 611.]

**230.** Let the instructor form several sentences, employing the words in **228** and involving the constructions in **229**. These sentences should be written by the students at sight.

## BOOK II — CHAPTER I

**231.** Sec. 1–4.

1. At daybreak they decided to pack up and join<sup>1</sup> Cyrus.
2. I will wait for you a day,<sup>2</sup> if you intend to come.
3. Would that Cyrus had not died.<sup>3</sup>
4. If he had<sup>4</sup> come, we would have put him on the throne.

**232.** Sec. 5–9.

1. We provided food as best we could<sup>5</sup> by using the oxen.
2. One of them, as it happened, was acquainted with tactics.<sup>6</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *to pack up and join* = *having packed up, to join*.    <sup>2</sup> What kind of time is expressed?    <sup>3</sup> *Would . . . died*: express this sentence in two ways. H. 870, 871, *a.*: G. 1507, 1511, 1512: B. 588: Go. 470.    <sup>4</sup> H. 895: G. 1397: B. 606: Go. 649.    <sup>5</sup> *as best we could*: cf. **ὅπως ἰδύνατο** (6).    <sup>6</sup> Cf. **τῶν ἀμφὶ τάξεως**.

3. They bade him surrender his arms and go to the king's court.<sup>1</sup>
4. It is not the privilege of the conquered<sup>2</sup> to reply.

**233. Sec. 10-13.**

1. Why must<sup>3</sup> the king persuade us and not come and take our arms?
2. I think that you are mine,<sup>4</sup> because I have a multitude of men.
3. Do not think,<sup>5</sup> soldiers, that we shall not use our valor.
4. Let them know,<sup>6</sup> however, that we are not foolish.

**234. Sec. 14-18.**

1. Some said that they had been and would be<sup>7</sup> valuable<sup>8</sup> friends.
2. He asked if you were<sup>9</sup> a Greek.
3. Advise us what you think<sup>10</sup> will bring you honor.
4. He will not surrender his arms, in order that<sup>11</sup> you may be more hopeful.

**235. Sec. 19-23.**

1. If you could be saved by fighting<sup>12</sup> the king, I should advise you not to surrender your arms.
2. We shall be more valuable friends, if we have<sup>13</sup> our arms.

<sup>1</sup> Use *θήρα*. <sup>2</sup> *It . . . conquered = it is of the conquered*. <sup>3</sup> See 73 and 74.  
<sup>4</sup> Use the possessive Genitive. <sup>5</sup> H. 874, a: G. 1346: B. 584: Go. 485.  
<sup>6</sup> *Let them know*: in exhortations of the third person, the Imperative is used; of the first person, the Subjunctive. <sup>7</sup> *had been and would be*: the direct discourse was *have been and will be*, etc. <sup>8</sup> *πολλοὺ ἔξιοι*. <sup>9</sup> What was the direct question? <sup>10</sup> *what you think*: *ὃ τι σοι δοκεῖ*. <sup>11</sup> Review all the common ways of expressing purpose. See 78 and 79. <sup>12</sup> Use the participle. <sup>13</sup> *if we have*: the participle is often used to express the protasis of a condition.

3. Carry back word, therefore, that we must wage<sup>1</sup> war.
4. Phalinus replies, "If you remain,<sup>2</sup> there will be a truce; and if you advance or retreat, war."

## BOOK II—CHAPTER II

## 236. Sec. I-4.

1. Ariaeus then<sup>3</sup> said, "There are many Persians nobler than I am."<sup>4</sup>
2. If you do not<sup>5</sup> come, we shall go away early.
3. At sunset they would not be able to cross the Tigris river without boats.
4. Whenever the signal is given,<sup>6</sup> follow me.

## 237. Sec. 5-10.

1. They obeyed him, because the others were inexperienced.<sup>7</sup>
2. About midnight, they grounded arms<sup>8</sup> and came together.
3. The barbarians swore that they would not<sup>9</sup> betray the Greeks.
4. Come now,<sup>10</sup> let us take the same<sup>11</sup> journey.

## 238. Sec. 11-15.

1. If you go away by the road<sup>12</sup> by which you came, you will perish from hunger.

<sup>1</sup> *that . . . wage*: H. 981: G. 1588: B. 235, 663-666: Go. 352-354, 596.

<sup>2</sup> *If you remain*: notice carefully the expression used in the text. <sup>3</sup> *δῆ*.

<sup>4</sup> Omit. <sup>5</sup> H. 1019, 1021: G. 1383, 1: B. 600: Go. 646: <sup>6</sup> *Whenever . . . given*: what kind of a condition? — *signal is given*: use *σημαίνω* impersonally.

<sup>7</sup> *because . . . inexperienced*: use the Genitive absolute or a conjunction, such as *ὅτε* or *ἐπεὶ*, and the Indicative. <sup>8</sup> *ground arms*: *τίθηναι τὰ ὅπλα*. <sup>9</sup> See 141.

<sup>10</sup> *Come now*: *ἔγχετε δῆ*. <sup>11</sup> What position has *αὐτός* when it means *the same*? <sup>12</sup> *by the . . . came*: cf. *ἐν ἧλθομεν*, H. 715, *δ*: G. 1057: B. 331: Go. 536.



2. You must<sup>1</sup> proceed through the country.
3. If we are once separated from the Persians, they will not<sup>2</sup> be able to overtake us.
4. We were deceived in this, because smoke appeared.<sup>3</sup>

### 239. Sec. 16-21.

1. At sunset, the very<sup>4</sup> wood of the houses will be carried off by the king.
2. We made a great<sup>5</sup> noise by calling one another, so that the enemy were terrified.<sup>6</sup>
3. A panic, however, fell upon the Greeks also.<sup>7</sup>
4. He said that whoever disclosed this would receive<sup>8</sup> a talent.

### REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I AND II

240. Learn the following important words which occur in Chapters I and II. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs, and, where indicated, notice the difference between the active and middle meanings.

1. ἄκων	8. γελάω
2. ἅμα	9. δύνω
3. ἀναγκάζω	10. ἐμπίπτω
4. ἀπαγγέλλω	11. ἐσθίω
5. ἀνέχω	12. εὕρισκω
6. ἄπειρος	13. ἐξοπλίζω
7. βοῦς	14. ζάω

<sup>1</sup> See 74. <sup>2</sup> H. 1032: G. 1360: B. 569, 2: Go. 489, a. <sup>3</sup> See the vocabulary for the difference between the active and middle meaning of φαίνω.

<sup>4</sup> Review all the uses of αὐτός: 46. <sup>5</sup> Use πολλός. <sup>6</sup> So that . . . terrified: is this a purpose or a result clause? <sup>7</sup> καί, meaning also, precedes the word it emphasizes. <sup>8</sup> whoever . . . receive: the direct statement was whoever discloses this will receive.

15. ἥλιος	27. οἶόν τε	40. σημαίνω
16. θύω (act. and mid.)	28. ὄμνυμι	41. συμβουλεύω
17. κηρύττω	29. ὄνος	42. σωτηρία
18. κήρυξ	30. παραδίδωμι	43. σῶος
19. κατασκηνόω	31. περιμένω	44. τιτρώσκω
20. σκῆνωμα	32. πορίζω	45. τοίνυν
21. καταλαμβάνω	33. προτεραῖος	46. τολμάω
22. κόπτω	34. ὑστεραῖος	47. φέρω
23. κρέας	35. σιγή	48. φρονέω
24. λόγχη	36. σκότος	49. ψεύδω
25. μάχομαι	37. σκοταῖος	50. χρή
26. ξίφος	38. στόλος	
	39. συμμίσγνυμι	

#### 241. Review the following points of syntax :

1. Wishes. [H. 870, 871, a: G. 1507, 1511, 1512: B. 587, 588: Go. 470, 476.]
2. Contrary to fact conditions. [H. 895: G. 1397: B. 606: Go. 649.]
3. *Must* and *Ought*. See 74 and 75.
4. Prohibitions. [H. 874, a: G. 1346: B. 584: Go. 485.]
5. Purpose clauses. See 78 and 79.
6. Construction used after ἀγγέλλω. [H. 981: G. 1588: B. 661: Go. 586.]
7. The negative of the protasis. [H. 1019, 1021: G. 1383, 1: B. 600: Go. 646.]
8. Verbs followed by μή and the Infinitive. See 141.
9. Uses of αὐτός. See 46.
10. Cognate Accusative. [H. 715, b: G. 1057: B. 331: Go. 536.]
11. Verbal in τέος. See 75.
12. Emphatic future. [H. 1032: G. 1360: B. 569, 2: Go. 489, a.]

**242.** Let the instructor form several sentences, employing the words in **240** and involving the constructions in **241.** These sentences should be written by the students at sight.

### BOOK II — CHAPTER III

#### **243.** Sec. 1-8.

1. At sunrise, he told<sup>1</sup> the heralds to wait until he was at leisure.<sup>2</sup>
2. He stationed the army so that everybody was well armed.
3. We will lead you to a place<sup>3</sup> whence you will get provisions.
4. It was not clear that the truce was for every one.

#### **244.** Sec. 9-15.

1. He feared, however, that our<sup>4</sup> soldiers also<sup>5</sup> would have the same fear.
2. He found that the trees had fallen down, so that they could not cross.<sup>6</sup>
3. If any one did not jump into the mud, he struck<sup>7</sup> him.
4. One cannot<sup>8</sup> see such palms in Greece.

#### **245.** Sec. 16-21.

1. Whenever the soldiers ate these, they wondered at the peculiarity of the flavor.

<sup>1</sup> *ἐπερ* is sometimes used in the sense of *command*, and then is followed by the Infinitive, instead of *ἐπε* and *αἰ*. <sup>2</sup> *wait . . . leisure*: the direct command was *wait until I am at leisure*. See 122, 123, 124. <sup>3</sup> Omit *to a place*.

<sup>4</sup> *our . . . fear = the same fear would be to our soldiers*. Use the Dative of possession. <sup>5</sup> *καὶ*. <sup>6</sup> *so . . . cross*: H. 927; G. 1449, 1450; B. 595; G. 566, *b*; 639, *a*. With the Infinitive the negative is *μη*; with the Indicative, *οὐ*.

<sup>7</sup> *ἔειπε* and the Aorist or Imperfect expresses a customary past action, and therefore may be used in the conclusion of a past general condition. <sup>8</sup> Cf. *ἐστὶν ἡσυχία*.

2. I will ask the king<sup>1</sup> to give me the privilege<sup>2</sup> of doing this.
3. I was the only one who arrived<sup>3</sup> with help.
4. We did not assemble with the avowed purpose<sup>4</sup> of leading you here.

246. Sec. 22-29.

1. Now that<sup>5</sup> Cyrus is dead, we shall not betray you.
2. They would not kill him, if you would not trouble<sup>6</sup> them.
3. I did not allow him to buy provisions.
4. Afterwards,<sup>7</sup> the brother-in-law<sup>8</sup> of the king took an oath.

BOOK II—CHAPTER IV

247. Sec. 1-5.

1. He does not bear malice against you<sup>9</sup> for the past.<sup>10</sup>
2. He will destroy the Greeks, that others may fear to make an expedition against him.<sup>11</sup>
3. He would not willingly, at least, wish<sup>12</sup> us to go away and mock<sup>13</sup> him.
4. If we should do this, Ariaeus would not lead us.<sup>14</sup>

248. Sec. 6-11.

1. I know<sup>15</sup> that the cavalry of the enemy is efficient.<sup>16</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Genitive with *παρὰ*. <sup>2</sup> Omit: see the idiom in the text, sec. 18. <sup>3</sup> *I was . . . arrived* = *I only (μόνος) arrived*. <sup>4</sup> *with . . . purpose*: H. 978: G. 1574: B. 656, 3: Go. 593, c. <sup>5</sup> *Now that*: *ἔπειτα*. <sup>6</sup> *would . . . trouble*: what kind of a condition? <sup>7</sup> *After this*. <sup>8</sup> *brother of the wife*. <sup>9</sup> Dative. <sup>10</sup> H. 744: G. 1126: B. 366: Go. 509, c. <sup>11</sup> This refers to the subject of *destroy*. What kind of a pronoun? <sup>12</sup> *would not wish*: *ἐν* and the Optative. <sup>13</sup> *and mock* = *having mocked*: use the Aorist participle. <sup>14</sup> H. 741: G. 1109: B. 356: Go. 510, c. <sup>15</sup> H. 982: G. 1588: B. 661: Go. 586. <sup>16</sup> *πολλοὶ ἄξιον*.

2. If <sup>1</sup> we should be conquered, whom would we save?
3. If <sup>1</sup> Tissaphernes leads, we will proceed by ourselves.
4. This furnished suspicion so that they kept <sup>2</sup> away from each other.

249. Sec. 12-17.

1. This wall was twenty parasangs <sup>3</sup> long.<sup>4</sup>
2. They arrived at a city which was twenty stadia distant from the park.
3. The pickets asked where they could see <sup>5</sup> the generals.
4. He intended to attack us, so that we could not <sup>6</sup> cross.

250. Sec. 18-23.

- (1) The intention to attack <sup>7</sup> us frightened me.
2. If there are many across the river, it will not be necessary for us to flee.
3. We asked him how many villages there were.<sup>8</sup>
4. I fear <sup>9</sup> to do harm to the king.

251. Sec. 24-28.

1. When it is dawn, he intends to attack <sup>10</sup> them while crossing.
2. He halted his own <sup>11</sup> army while the Greeks were passing by.

<sup>1</sup> H. 969, *d*: G. 1563, 5: B. 614: Go. 583. <sup>2</sup> *so . . . kept*: if the actual result is expressed, what mood is used? <sup>3</sup> What case expresses the measure? <sup>4</sup> = *in length*: Accusative of specification. <sup>5</sup> *where they could see*: direct, *where can we see*? H. 872: G. 1327: B. 563: Go. 480. <sup>6</sup>  $\mu\eta$  is the negative of purpose clauses, after  $\gamma\alpha$ ,  $\omega\varsigma$ , or  $\delta\pi\omega\varsigma$ . <sup>7</sup> *The . . . attack*: the Infinitive with (or without) the article is used as the subject. What tense would be used here? <sup>8</sup> *how . . . were*: what was the direct question? <sup>9</sup> Consult the vocabulary for the two meanings of  $\delta\epsilon\lambda\omicron$  and the constructions following it. <sup>10</sup> What tense often follows  $\mu\epsilon\lambda\lambda\omega$ ? See the text. <sup>11</sup> The possessive Genitive of the reflexive is in the attributive position.

3. As long as he looked<sup>1</sup> on, so long the Persian was terrified.
4. He proceeded thirty parasangs, keeping the river on his right.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS III AND IV

**252.** Learn the following important words which occur in Chapters III and IV. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs, and, where indicated, notice the difference between the active, and middle meanings.

- |                             |                   |
|-----------------------------|-------------------|
| 1. αἰσχύνομ (act. and mid.) | 21. ἔτος          |
| 2. αἰσχύνη                  | 22. ἐσθίω         |
| 3. ἀπέχω                    | 23. ἐπίσταμαι     |
| 4. παρέχω                   | 24. ἐφίστημι      |
| 5. αἰτέω                    | 25. ἐπίστασις     |
| 6. ἐρωτάω                   | 26. ἐπιστρατεύω   |
| 7. ἀνερωτάω                 | 27. ἐπιστρατεία   |
| 8. ἀφίημι                   | 28. ἔχθρα         |
| 9. ἄχρι                     | 29. ζητέω         |
| 10. βοήθεια                 | 30. ἡγέομαι       |
| 11. γείτων                  | 31. ἡσυχία        |
| 12. γέ                      | 32. θνήσκω        |
| 13. διανοέομαι              | 33. ἀποκτείνω     |
| 14. διατρίβω                | 34. μήκος         |
| 15. δοῦλος                  | 35. ὕψος          |
| 16. δασύς                   | 36. νοῦς          |
| 17. ἐκπλήττω                | 37. οἶος          |
| 18. ἔφοδος                  | 38. ὄθεν          |
| 19. ἐντυγχάνω               | 39. ὀπισθοφυλακέω |
| 20. εὐθύς                   | 40. ὀκνέω         |

<sup>1</sup> This is a past general condition.

- |                 |                |            |
|-----------------|----------------|------------|
| 41. προδίδωμι   | 45. συσπουδάζω | 49. φράζω  |
| 42. προθυμέομαι | 46. σχολάζω    | 50. ψευδής |
| 43. σπεύδω      | 47. ταραττώ    |            |
| 44. σπουδάζω    | 48. ὑποψία     |            |

**253.** Review the following points of syntax :

1. *Until*, 122, 123, 124.
2. Result clauses and their negatives. [H. 927: G. 1449-50: B. 595: Go. 566, *b*, 639, *a*.]
3. ὥς and the participle. [H. 978: G. 1574: B. 656, 3: Go. 593, *c*.]
4. μετά with the Genitive and the Accusative.
5. Genitive of cause. [H. 744: G. 1126: B. 366: Go. 509, *c*.]
6. Case after verbs of Ruling. [H. 741: G. 1109: B. 356: Go. 510.]
7. Verbs followed by the participle in indirect discourse. [H. 981, 982: G. 1588: B. 661: Go. 586.]
8. Participle for the protasis. [H. 969, *d*: G. 1563, 5: B. 614: Go. 583.]
9. Potential Optative. [H. 872: G. 1327: B. 563: Go. 480.]
10. What case expresses the measure?

**254.** Let the instructor form several sentences, employing the words in **252** and involving the constructions in **253**. These sentences should be written by the students at sight.

## BOOK II — CHAPTER V

**255.** Sec. I-8.

1. They put an end<sup>1</sup> to these suspicions before<sup>2</sup> he met Clearchus.
2. I perceive by observation<sup>3</sup> that you can not dispel the distrust.

<sup>1</sup> παύω in the active means to *make stop*; in the middle, to *cease*. <sup>2</sup> See 126. <sup>3</sup> *by observation* = *by observing*: present participle.

3. Some<sup>1</sup> do irreparable evils to their friends; others<sup>1</sup> do not intend to.
4. In the present case, into what sort of darkness can we run<sup>2</sup> off?

## 256. Sec. 9-15.

1. If we should try to kill you, every<sup>8</sup> crowd would be very frightful.
2. Who is so mad as not to use<sup>4</sup> the forces of the king?
3. I think that I should punish<sup>5</sup> them by using you as allies.
4. This being the case,<sup>6</sup> I shall not distrust you.<sup>7</sup>

## 257. Sec. 16-23.

1. Well,<sup>8</sup> Clearchus, do I seem to lack infantry?
2. There are so many mountains over which<sup>9</sup> you must proceed.
3. How, then, could we do<sup>10</sup> this by perjury?
4. I know in how many ways<sup>11</sup> you are useful to me.

## 258. Sec. 24-33.

1. Those who try to slander us are worthy<sup>12</sup> of suffering death.
2. Clearchus evidently thought that he ought to go to Tissaphernes.

<sup>1</sup> οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δέ. <sup>2</sup> The potential Optative. <sup>3</sup> πᾶς in the singular without the article often means *every*. <sup>4</sup> See 159. <sup>5</sup> *should punish*: the student will notice that when ἄν and the Infinitive depend upon οἶμαι, ἄν is placed close to οἶμαι. <sup>6</sup> *This . . . case*: cf. the idiom in the text, sec. 12. <sup>7</sup> H. 764, 2: G. 1160: B. 376: Go. 520. <sup>8</sup> ἀλλά. <sup>9</sup> *over which*: H. 715, b: G. 1057: B. 331: Go. 536. <sup>10</sup> *could we do*: cf. πᾶς ἄν ἐξελοίμεθα, sec. 20. <sup>11</sup> *in . . . ways*: an Accusative of specification. <sup>12</sup> ἄξιός is one of the adjectives followed by the Infinitive.



3. We suspect that he is secretly meeting the enemy with<sup>1</sup> Ariaeus.
4. At the same signal we killed whoever were<sup>2</sup> inside.

259. Sec. 34-42.

1. We were all frightened, and thought<sup>3</sup> that the king would come immediately.
2. He will demand of us<sup>4</sup> our arms, because we are his.<sup>5</sup>
3. We swore that we would betray the same men.
4. Send our generals here, since they will give the best advice<sup>6</sup> for both you and us.

BOOK II — CHAPTER VI

260. Sec. 1-7

1. These generals, who had been captured<sup>7</sup> in this way, were beheaded.
2. When he no longer obeyed, he sailed off<sup>8</sup> to wage war on the Thracians.
3. When Clearchus is allowed<sup>9</sup> to have money, he chooses to spend it on war.
4. All acknowledged that he was<sup>10</sup> warlike and fond of danger.

261. Sec. 8-15.

1. Clearchus was capable<sup>11</sup> of impressing on his soldiers that they must obey him.<sup>12</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Genitive with *μετά*; not Dative with *σύν*. <sup>2</sup> *we . . . inside*: what kind of a condition? <sup>3</sup> *were frightened and thought* = *being frightened, thought*. <sup>4</sup> Would this be Genitive? H. 724: G. 1069: B. 340: Go. 535. <sup>5</sup> *of him*. <sup>6</sup> *give the best advice* = *advise the best things*. <sup>7</sup> *who . . . captured*: see 40. <sup>8</sup> *sailed off* = *went off sailing*. <sup>9</sup> *When . . . allowed*: H. 973: G. 1569: B. 343: Go. 591. <sup>10</sup> H. 981: G. 1588: B. 661: Go. 586. <sup>11</sup> H. 952: G. 1526: B. 641: Go. 565, *a*. <sup>12</sup> An indirect reflexive.

2. He used to say<sup>1</sup> that the soldiers ought to fear him more than they do the enemy.
3. Whenever they could,<sup>2</sup> many chose another general.
4. The fact that they did not fear<sup>3</sup> the enemy made them courageous.

## 262. Sec. 16-23.

1. From early boyhood, Proxenus desired great power.<sup>4</sup>
2. He did not think that he ought to impress on his soldiers fear of himself.<sup>5</sup>
3. Those who did wrong<sup>6</sup> evidently distrusted him.
4. Menon is deceitful, that he may do wrong without<sup>7</sup> being punished.

## 263. Sec. 24-30.

1. We thought that we alone knew how many were<sup>8</sup> perjured.
2. Menon delighted in<sup>9</sup> being able to slander his friends.
3. By doing wrong<sup>10</sup> with them, he expected<sup>11</sup> his soldiers to obey him.<sup>12</sup>
4. Although they had done<sup>13</sup> the same things, his fellow generals were not tortured.

<sup>1</sup> What tense expresses this idea? <sup>2</sup> *they could*: use *ἐάν*. <sup>3</sup> *The fact . . . fear*: the Infinitive with the article is often used as the subject of a verb. The negative is *μή*. <sup>4</sup> *ἐπιθυμῶ* is followed by the Genitive. <sup>5</sup> What kind of a reflexive? <sup>6</sup> *Those . . . wrong*: see 40. <sup>7</sup> *that . . . punished*: notice the idiom at the end of sec. 21, in the text. <sup>8</sup> The direct question was *how many are*? <sup>9</sup> *in being able*: see 161. <sup>10</sup> *By doing wrong*: *ἐκ τοῦ* and the Infinitive. <sup>11</sup> *ἀξίω*. <sup>12</sup> Review the use of the reflexives. See 43 and 47. <sup>13</sup> *Although . . . done*: H. 969, e; G. 1563, 6; B. 653, 7; Go. 583.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS V AND VI

**264.** Learn the following important words which occur in Chapters V and VI. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs, and, where indicated, notice the difference between the active and middle meanings.

1. αἰκίζω	18. ἐπιόρκος	35. παύω (act. and mid.)
2. ἀπιστέω	19. ἐρμηνεύς	36. πονηρός
3. ἀπιστία	20. εὐεργετέω	37. πάρειμι
4. ἀδικέω	21. εὐεργέτης	38. πόρος
5. ἀξιόω	22. εὐεργεσία	39. ἄπορος
6. διαπράττω	23. θανατόω	40. σαφῶς
7. δύσπορος	24. ἥδομαι	41. συναδικέω
8. εὐπορος	25. καταγελάω	42. συνακολουθέω
9. εἰρήνη	26. κατεργάζομαι	43. συγγίγνομαι
10. ἐμποιέω	27. κολάζω	44. σημείον
11. ἐλεύθερος	28. κτάομαι	45. τάχος
12. ἐπιθυμέω	29. κτήμα	46. τιμωρέω
13. ἐπιθυμία	30. μαίνομαι	47. τιμωρία
14. ἔξειμι	31. μεταμέλω	48. τρόπος
15. ὄρκος	32. μέμφομαι	49. ψεύδω
16. ἐπιορκέω	33. οἰκείος	50. ἔξαπατόω
17. ἐπιορκία	34. ὁμολογέω	

**265.** Review the following points of syntax:

1. *Before*, 126.
2. πᾶς with and without the article. [H. 672, δ: B. 455.]
3. Relative clause of result, 159.
4. Verbs followed by the Dative. [H. 764, 2: G. 1160: B. 376: Go. 520.]

5. Verbals in τέος. [H. 988-990: G. 1594-97: B. 663-666: Go. 352-354.]

6. δῆλος and φανερός (εἰμί). [H. 981: G. 1589: B. 661: Go. 586.]

7. Verbs followed by two Accusatives. [H. 724: G. 1069: B. 340: Go. 535.]

8. Use of the participle for a relative clause, 40.

9. Accusative absolute. [H. 973: G. 1569: B. 343: Go. 591.]

10. Adjectives followed by the Infinitive. [H. 952: G. 1526: B. 641: Go. 565, a.]

11. Use of the reflexive pronouns, 43, 47.

12. The article and the Infinitive, 161.

13. Various meanings of the participle. [H. 969: G. 1563: B. 653, 1-8: Go. 583.]

266. Let the instructor form several sentences, employing the words in 264 and involving the constructions in 265. These sentences should be written by the students at sight.

### BOOK III—CHAPTER I

#### 267. Sec. 1-5.

1. If no one furnishes a market place for the Greeks, they will not taste of food.<sup>1</sup>
2. They think that they<sup>2</sup> will never again see their wives and children.
3. I promise you that, if you come, Cyrus will be<sup>3</sup> your friend.
4. They suspected<sup>4</sup> that Xenophon would become a friend to the Spartans.

<sup>1</sup> H. 742: G. 1102: B. 356: Go. 510.    <sup>2</sup> When may the subject of an Infinitive be omitted?    <sup>3</sup> *that . . . will be*: what was the direct discourse?

<sup>4</sup> H. 887: G. 1378: B. 594: Go. 610, 611.

## 268. Sec. 6-12.

1. He asks the god whether<sup>1</sup> it is better for him<sup>2</sup> to go or to remain at Athens.
2. As soon as I set out on the journey inland, the expedition will be against the Pisidians.<sup>3</sup>
3. It was clear that the majority<sup>4</sup> were unwilling.
4. He feared that the dream was from Zeus.

## 269. Sec. 13-18.

1. If we get into the<sup>5</sup> power of the enemy at daybreak, we shall never be older..
2. We declared war against the enemy before we made preparations.
3. Would they not resort<sup>6</sup> to every means to torture us?
4. We must take care that he does not make us slaves.<sup>7</sup>

## 270. Sec. 19-25.

1. I never ceased considering how many provisions the king has.
2. We have no share<sup>8</sup> in these good things, except by purchase.<sup>9</sup>
3. Since we do not perjure ourselves,<sup>10</sup> we refrain from these prizes.
4. If you do not wish me to lead, I will follow you.

<sup>1</sup> See 136. <sup>2</sup> To whom does this refer? <sup>3</sup> *As soon . . . Pisidians*: a vivid future relative condition. <sup>4</sup> *the majority*: οἱ πολλοί. <sup>5</sup> *into the power of*: ἐπὶ with the Dative. <sup>6</sup> *Would . . . resort*: H. 1015; G. 1603; B. 572; Go. 668. <sup>7</sup> *that . . . slaves*: H. 885; G. 1372; B. 593; Go. 638, a. <sup>8</sup> See the vocabulary for the construction following μέτεμι. <sup>9</sup> *except by purchase* = *if we do not buy*. What negative is used in the protasis? <sup>10</sup> *Since . . . ourselves*: participle.

**271. Sec. 26-33.**

1. We can not get safety<sup>1</sup> in any other way than by persuading the king.
2. We will not surrender our arms until<sup>2</sup> we get a truce.
3. I think that we ought to take away his captaincy.
4. Wherever there is no general, they summon a lieutenant general.

**272. Sec. 34-38.**

1. We shall plan whatever good we can.<sup>3</sup>
2. If you should not evidently be making preparations against the enemy, the soldiers would be cowards.
3. Know well, however, that you get more honor than these.<sup>4</sup>
4. By<sup>5</sup> doing this, I think that you would help the army.

**273. Sec. 39-47.**

1. This being the case, I know that they would go to their arms despondently.
2. Soldiers, strive<sup>6</sup> to die nobly.
3. We praised them for what they said and did.
4. Let us elect the generals and come<sup>7</sup> into the middle of the camp.

<sup>1</sup> Cf. the text in sec. 26. <sup>2</sup> *until . . . truce*: see 122, 123, 124. <sup>3</sup> *whatever . . . can* = *if we are able any good thing*. Review conditions in 113-115.

<sup>4</sup> *get . . . these* = *get more than these in honor*. <sup>5</sup> *By doing this*: use participle. <sup>6</sup> *to die nobly*:  $\pi\epsilon\pi\lambda\ \tau\omicron\theta$  and the Infinitive. <sup>7</sup> *Let us elect . . . and come* = *having elected . . . let us come* (hortatory Subjunctive).

## BOOK III — CHAPTER II

## 274. Sec. 1-6.

1. After the election of the generals,<sup>1</sup> Chirisophus said,  
"Our former allies have deserted us."
2. May we never, at least alive, get<sup>2</sup> into the hands of the enemy.
3. He swore in person<sup>3</sup> that he would consider it of the greatest importance not to destroy us.
4. We must never again suffer this.

## 275. Sec. 7-11.

1. It is right<sup>4</sup> to equip myself for war as best I can.
2. If we inflict punishment<sup>5</sup> on the enemy, we shall not be greatly discouraged.
3. I happened to be saying that the enemy have broken the truce, contrary to the oaths.
4. The Persians came to destroy<sup>6</sup> Athens utterly.

## 276. Sec. 12-17.

1. We vowed that we would find as many she-goats as we killed<sup>7</sup> of the enemy.
2. Although<sup>8</sup> Xerxes collected a numberless host, he did not, at that time, conquer our ancestors.

<sup>1</sup> After . . . generals = when the generals had been elected. H. 837: G. 1261. <sup>2</sup> May . . . get: see 70-72. <sup>3</sup> in person: αὐτός. <sup>4</sup> It is right: use ὀρθός ἔχει. Notice that ἔχει with adverbs means to be. <sup>5</sup> inflict punishment: for this expression, see the text (sec. 8, line 7). <sup>6</sup> to destroy . . . utterly: express in at least three ways. See 79. <sup>7</sup> we would . . . killed: the vow in the direct form was we will find . . . as we kill, which was a vivid future relative condition. <sup>8</sup> How is a concession commonly expressed in Greek? See H. 969, ε: G. 1563, 6: B. 653, 7: Go. 583.

3. Why is it fitting for you to be more courageous?
4. Do not<sup>1</sup> be drawn up with the men of Ariaeus.

**277. Sec. 18-23.**

1. Bear in mind that horsemen are not the<sup>2</sup> ones who win victories.
2. We will strike whomever we wish.
3. It is better to take provisions than to use their<sup>3</sup> measure.
4. I say that we are braver than they are.<sup>4</sup>

**278. Sec. 24-28.**

1. I, at least, say that you ought to live somewhere<sup>5</sup> here.
2. If we had once learned to live in idleness, we should have forgotten<sup>6</sup> the way home.
3. It is the privilege of the conquerors to say how many<sup>7</sup> good things they can have.<sup>8</sup>
4. In the second place I think it is best to get rid of the superfluous baggage.

**279. Sec. 29-34.**

1. They thought that we should perish, if there were no<sup>9</sup> leaders.
2. You ought to punish the one who disobeys.<sup>10</sup>
3. In this way you will allow no one to be a coward.
4. Let all who think this best raise<sup>11</sup> their hands.

<sup>1</sup> *Do . . . up*: see 62. <sup>2</sup> *the ones who win*: see 40. — *win*: ποιεῖν. <sup>3</sup> Use ἑαίματος in the predicate position. <sup>4</sup> Omit. <sup>5</sup> Notice that ποῦ, *where*? is an interrogative, while ποῦ is enclitic, meaning *somewhere*. Likewise πῶς, *how*? πῶς, *somewhat*. <sup>6</sup> H. 742: G. 1102: B. 356: Go. 511. <sup>7</sup> *how many*: ὅποσα. <sup>8</sup> *how many . . . have*: the direct question was a potential Optative, *how many good things can we have*? H. 872: G. 1327: B. 563: Go. 480. <sup>9</sup> When the participle is used for the protasis, the negative is μή. <sup>10</sup> *the one who disobeys*: see 40. <sup>11</sup> *Let all raise*: the third person of the Imperative is used in exhortations of the third person.



## 280. Sec. 35-39.

1. If the enemy should follow after us, it would probably be safer for us to form<sup>1</sup> a square.
2. We ought to be able to use immediately those who have been drawn up.
3. May Chirisophus for the present lead this square.
4. Let us therefore remember<sup>2</sup> to be brave.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I AND II

281. Learn the following important words which occur in Chapters I and II. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs, and, where indicated, notice the difference between the active and middle meanings.

1. ἀγείρω	14. διείργω
2. ἀθυμέω	15. ἔτι
3. ἀθυμία	16. ἔκγονος
4. ἀθύμως	17. πρόγονος
5. αἰδέομαι	18. ἐπιμελέομαι
6. ἀμύνω	19. ἐπιμελής
7. ἀναγιγνώσκω	20. ἡττάομαι
8. ἀνακοινόω	21. καθεύδω
9. ἀναμένω	22. κατάκειμαι
10. ἀνατείνω	23. καιρός
11. ἀποτίνω	24. λήγω
12. ἀρχαῖος	25. λαγχάνω
13. ἄφθονος	26. λυπέω

<sup>1</sup> ποίεω. <sup>2</sup> *Let us remember* : in an exhortation of the first person, use the Subjunctive; in one of the third person, the Imperative. Notice that the Perfect middle of *μυνήσκω* is used with a present meaning. Note the difference between the active and middle meaning.

27. λυπή	39. σκευοφορέω
28. μιμέομαι	40. σκευοφόρος
29. μιμνήσκω (act. and mid.)	41. στέρομαι
30. ὄχλος	42. ὑβρίζω
31. πατρίς	43. ὕβρις
32. πλαίσιον	44. ὑπολαμβάνω
33. πόθος	45. ὑφίημι
34. προθυμέομαι	46. ὑφίστημι
35. συνπροθυμέομαι	47. ψῦχος
36. σαφής	48. ψυχή
37. ἀσάφεια	49. ψηφίζω
38. σκεῦος	50. ὠνέομαι

**282.** Review the following points of syntax:

1. Verbs followed by the Genitive. [H. 742; G. 1102; B. 356; Go. 510, 511.]
2. Indirect questions, **136**.
3. **ὅπως** and the Future Indicative. [H. 885; G. 1372; B. 593; Go. 638, α.]
4. General conditions, **92, 107-109**.
5. Relative conditions, **113-115**.
6. Wishes, **70-72**.
7. Purpose clauses, **79**.
8. Prohibitions, **62**.
9. Participle for a relative clause, **40**.
10. Potential Optative. [H. 872; G. 1327; B. 563; Go. 48α.]
11. Exhortations, **59** and **60**.
12. The Perfect middle system of **μιμνήσκω**.

**283.** Let the instructor form several sentences, employing the words in **281** and involving the constructions in **282**. These sentences should be written by the students at sight.

## BOOK III—CHAPTER III

## 284. Sec. 1-6.

1. We shall share with one another whatever we do not throw<sup>1</sup> into the fire.
2. If I should see that they are planning some safety, I should tell you what I have in mind.
3. You cannot be saved without my consent.<sup>2</sup>
4. When Mithridates appears, we shall go away.<sup>3</sup>

## 285. Sec. 7-14.

1. We do not shoot far enough to reach the Persians.<sup>4</sup>
2. While we were fleeing, we injured them by shooting<sup>5</sup> backward.
3. Within this day, we must pass over<sup>6</sup> twenty stadia.
4. I suffered harm in not advancing.<sup>7</sup>

## 286. Sec. 15-20.

1. The barbarians were so swift that we could not catch them.
2. We need slingers,<sup>8</sup> in order to injure them as they proceed.
3. If you give them money, they will probably help us somewhat.<sup>9</sup>
4. I see that many horses have been left behind.

<sup>1</sup> *whatever . . . throw*: H. 1019, 1021: G. 1383, 1: B. 600: Go. 646.

<sup>2</sup> *without my consent*: cf. βασιλῆος ἄκοντος. <sup>3</sup> *go away*: cf. ᾤχετο ἀπὸν.

<sup>4</sup> *We . . . Persians*: cf. the text in latter part of sec. 7. <sup>5</sup> *by shooting*: use the participle. <sup>6</sup> *pass over*: διέρχομαι. <sup>7</sup> *in not advancing*: ἐν τῷ and Infinitive. See H. 1023: G. 1611. <sup>8</sup> Genitive. <sup>9</sup> = *in respect to something*, τὸ.

## BOOK III — CHAPTER IV

## 287. Sec. 1-9.

1. I fear that they must<sup>1</sup> cross the ravine.
2. We promised that if he should give us so many, we would do much damage.<sup>2</sup>
3. When the enemy follow,<sup>3</sup> the Greeks will mutilate the dead.
4. This city was taken by<sup>4</sup> siege.

## 288. Sec. 10-17.

1. This wall was one hundred and fifty feet high.
2. They came into view<sup>5</sup> with the force with which they aided the king.
3. Whenever the Rhodians shot, they did not miss their<sup>6</sup> man.<sup>7</sup>
4. We shall continue to use<sup>8</sup> the arrows which have been taken.

## 289. Sec. 18-23.

1. The Greeks happened upon the village, and laid in provisions during the following day.
2. If the road is ever too<sup>9</sup> narrow, the hoplites are thrown into confusion.
3. Whenever they had to cross a bridge, the enemy attacked them.

<sup>1</sup> H. 411: G. 495, 1, 2: B. 199, 2: Go. 321. <sup>2</sup> *do . . . damage*: ποίω πολλά κακά. <sup>3</sup> *When . . . follow*: Genitive absolute. <sup>4</sup> *by siege* = *by besieging*. <sup>5</sup> *came into view*: notice the difference in meaning between φαίνομαι and ἐπιφαίνομαι. <sup>6</sup> Omit. <sup>7</sup> H. 748: G. 1099. <sup>8</sup> *continue to use*: H. 981: G. 1580: B. 660: Go. 585. <sup>9</sup> The comparative degree often expresses this idea.

4. The interval<sup>1</sup> was so<sup>2</sup> wide that they did not<sup>3</sup> cross by companies.

290. Sec. 24-33.

1. Then the Persians attacked them, as they were ascending the second hill.
2. The light-armed soldiers will be useless, because they are shut up<sup>4</sup> inside of the hoplites.
3. We feared that they would go along parallel with us.
4. Necessity taught the barbarians not<sup>5</sup> to skirmish with the Greeks.

291. Sec. 34-40.

1. The Persian has to<sup>6</sup> mount his horse when there is confusion.
2. The Greeks broke camp within hearing of the enemy.<sup>7</sup>
3. On the fourth day, the Greeks intended to pass by the spur of a mountain.
4. We can<sup>8</sup> see that the hill has been taken ahead of us.

292. Sec. 41-49.

1. If you desire, take<sup>9</sup> the men and proceed to the mountain.
2. "Well," said<sup>10</sup> Xenophon, "I urge you to send picked men with me."

<sup>1</sup> τὸ διάστημα. <sup>2</sup> οὕτω. <sup>3</sup> If the Infinitive follows ὥστε, the negative is μὴ, while οὐ is the negative used with the Indicative. <sup>4</sup> because . . . shut up: H. 969, δ: G. 1563, 2: B. 653, 4: Go. 583. <sup>5</sup> μὴ is the regular negative for the Infinitive. In indirect discourse οὐ may be used, being retained from οὐ of the direct. <sup>6</sup> has to: bear in mind that δεῖ is regularly followed by the Accusative and the Infinitive, not the Dative. <sup>7</sup> within . . . enemy: Genitive absolute. <sup>8</sup> ἔβλεπον. <sup>9</sup> Participle; what tense? <sup>10</sup> Notice that φημί is the verb of saying, which is generally used in the middle of a direct quotation.

3. Consider that after a little toil<sup>1</sup> you will see your wives.
4. We captured the height before<sup>2</sup> the Persians.

## BOOK III — CHAPTER V

## 293. Sec. 1-9.

1. These were captured while scattered in the plain.
2. We are apprehensive lest they should not concede the country to be ours.
3. The river was so deep<sup>3</sup> that they did not try the depth.<sup>4</sup>
4. Provide for me what<sup>5</sup> I need.

## 294. Sec. 10-18.

1. By throwing on wood, I shall keep you from slipping.<sup>6</sup>
2. The captives<sup>7</sup> said that the king passed the summer at Susa.
3. They also said<sup>8</sup> that these people made a treaty in the plain.
4. Whenever they eat dinner, everybody halts.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS III, IV, AND V

295. Learn the following important words which occur in Chapters III, IV, and V. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs, and, where indicated, notice the difference between the active and middle meanings.

- |               |                  |               |
|---------------|------------------|---------------|
| 1. αἶξ        | 3. ἄκρον         | 5. ἀμιλλάομαι |
| 2. αἰχμάλωτος | 4. ἀκροβολίζομαι | 6. ἀποτέμνω   |

<sup>1</sup> after . . . toil: participle. <sup>2</sup> captured . . . before: use φθάνω. See the text at end of sec. 49. See 169. <sup>3</sup> so deep = so much in respect to depth.

<sup>4</sup> H. 738: G. 1099: B. 356: Go. 510. <sup>5</sup> What case follows verbs of plenty and want? <sup>6</sup> from slipping = so as not to slip. <sup>7</sup> the captives = those who had been taken. <sup>8</sup> Use φημί.

7. ἀπονοστέω	17. διαφθείρω	27. ἀναζεύγνυμι
8. ἀμαρτάνω	18. μεταδίδωμι	28. ἡνίκα
9. ἀναχωρέω	19. ἀντιδίδωμι	29. κάω
10. ἐπαναχωρέω	20. ἐπιγίγνομαι	30. κινέω
11. ἀσκός	21. ἐπισιτίζομαι	31. παρακελεύομαι
12. ἄχρηστος	22. ἐπιτυχάνω	32. διακελεύομαι
13. δύσχρηστος	23. ἐξικνέομαι	33. κατακλείω
14. βέλος	24. ἐξαπίνης	34. καταφρονέω
15. βραχύς	25. ἐπιμύγνυμι	35. λόφος
16. δέω	26. ζεύγνυμι	36. γήλοφος
37. λοιδορέω	44. πόρρω	
38. μακρός	45. σκεδάννυμι	
39. νοέω	46. στρέφω	
40. ἐννοέομαι	47. στενός	
41. ὀλισθάνω	48. ὑψηλός	
42. ὅμοιος	49. φάσκω	
43. πλατύς	50. φθάνω	

**296.** Review the following points of syntax :

1. Negative of protasis and apodosis. [H. 1019, 1021 : G. 1383, 1 : B. 600 : Go. 646.]
2. The negative used with Infinitive. [H. 1023 : G. 1611 : B. 633 : Go. 564.]
3. Contraction of dissyllabics in έω. [H. 411 : G. 495, 1, 2 : B. 199, 2 : Go. 321.]
4. Verbs governing the Genitive. [H. 748, 738 : G. 1099 : B. 356 : Go. 510, 511.]
5. Supplementary participle. [H. 981 : G. 1580 : B. 660 : Go. 585.]
6. The negatives with result clauses, 289, note 4.
7. Various translations of the participle. [H. 969 : G. 1563 : B. 653 : Go. 583.]
8. Use of φθάνω, 169.

**297.** Let the instructor form several sentences, employing the words in **295** and involving the constructions in **296**. These sentences should be written by the students at sight.

### BOOK IV — CHAPTER I

#### **298.** Sec. I—10.

1. I hear from the captives<sup>1</sup> that we shall have to<sup>2</sup> cross the sources of the Tigris.
2. There was danger that the enemy would perceive<sup>3</sup> them.
3. The Greeks did not carry off their wives and children, in order that they might let them pass through.
4. Some of the Carduchi suddenly fell upon the Greeks.

#### **299.** Sec. 11—18.

1. If, however, the enemy had been more numerous, we should all have been wounded.
2. The generals decided that they must leave the rest behind, because there were many disabled.<sup>4</sup>
3. Whenever the snow is deep,<sup>5</sup> the enemy attack us vigorously.
4. A brave man was shot in the head.<sup>6</sup>

#### **300.** Sec. 19—28.

1. We could not bury the dead and fight at the same time.<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *from the captives*: Genitive of source. <sup>2</sup> *have to*: use *δέω*. <sup>3</sup> *that . . . perceive* H. 887: G. 1378: B. 594: Go. 610, 611. <sup>4</sup> *because . . . disabled*: Genitive absolute. — *disabled*: ἀπόμαχος. <sup>5</sup> πολὺς. <sup>6</sup> *in the head*: H. 718: G. 1058: B. 337: Go. 537. <sup>7</sup> *bury . . . time*: cf. φεύγοντες ἅμα μάχεσθαι in sec 19.



2. If they trouble<sup>1</sup> us, I will form an ambush and take<sup>2</sup> them alive.
3. The guide was asked if it were impossible to pass by the height.
4. "The whole<sup>3</sup> army," said he, "will follow under my command."

## BOOK IV — CHAPTER II

### 301. Sec. 1-6.

1. After binding the guide, we agreed to hold the pass during the day.
2. We must cross without being seen.<sup>4</sup>
3. They tried to approach the entrance<sup>5</sup> until it was dark.
4. The guards thought that they were encamped on this road.

### 302. Sec. 7-13.

1. When they heard the trumpet,<sup>6</sup> Chrisophus and his men rushed against the enemy.
2. He had to either proceed along<sup>7</sup> the road or be cut off from the rest.
3. If we leave a retreat, the enemy will escape.
4. Xenophon feared that the hill would be taken<sup>8</sup> by the enemy.

### 303. Sec. 14-21.

1. We suspected<sup>9</sup> that we should be surrounded if they should depart.

<sup>1</sup> πράγματα παρέχω. <sup>2</sup> form . . . and take = having formed . . . shall take. <sup>3</sup> πᾶς has the predicate position. <sup>4</sup> cross . . . seen: cf. λάθουιν in sec. 2, and for its use, see H. 984: G. 1586: B. 660, n.: G. 585, a. <sup>5</sup> Dative. <sup>6</sup> H. 742: G. 1102: B. 356: Go. 511. <sup>7</sup> κατά. <sup>8</sup> What verb is regularly used as the passive of αἰτέω? <sup>9</sup> Is this a verb of saying or thinking?

2. He said that they arrived at the village by jumping down the ledge.
3. We shall give up the dead on condition that<sup>1</sup> the enemy do not rush against us.
4. One man had his leg crushed.<sup>2</sup>

### 304. Sec. 22-28.

1. The wine was so plentiful that they encamped<sup>3</sup> there.
2. Whenever Xenophon sallied forth from the rear, he got above the blockaders.<sup>4</sup>
3. Sometimes<sup>5</sup> we troubled the barbarians.
4. The arrows which they used were more than two cubits in length.

## BOOK IV—CHAPTER III

### 305. Sec. 1-9.

1. They remembered<sup>6</sup> all<sup>7</sup> they suffered at the hands of the king.
2. They armed themselves to prevent the enemy from crossing.<sup>8</sup>
3. If they ever retreated, they became exposed to the missiles.
4. During<sup>9</sup> this night, Xenophon had a dream.

### 306. Sec. 10-17.

1. One might<sup>10</sup> approach Xenophon while he was eating dinner.

<sup>1</sup> on condition that: ἐφ' ᾧ and the Infinitive. <sup>2</sup> had . . . crushed = was crushed in respect to his leg. <sup>3</sup> What is the difference between the Indicative and Infinitive in a result clause after ὥστε? H. 927: G. 1450: B. 595: Go. 566, b, 639, a. <sup>4</sup> the blockaders = those hindering. <sup>5</sup> ἤν δὲ ὁπότε. <sup>6</sup> H. 742: G. 1102: B. 356: Go. 511. <sup>7</sup> = all things as many as, πάντων ὅσων. <sup>8</sup> from crossing: H. 963: G. 1549: B. 643: Go. 572-573. <sup>9</sup> Is this duration of time? <sup>10</sup> one might = it was impossible to (ἔξουσι).

2. They decided that it was safe to strip and cross<sup>1</sup> the river.
3. How<sup>2</sup> can we conquer<sup>3</sup> those in front?
4. The young men led the way, with some on their right and some on their left.

### 307. Sec. 18-26.

1. He runs at full speed to shut off the men along the river.
2. We shouted to them not<sup>4</sup> to flee.
3. When we saw what was going on<sup>5</sup> across the river, we attacked the enemy.
4. Xenophon passed along the command to wheel against the Carduchi.

### 308. Sec. 27-34.

1. Whenever we begin to cross, we sing songs.
2. He ordered us to run as soon as the enemy wheeled about.<sup>6</sup>
3. The man who gets across first<sup>7</sup> will be the best.
4. When the Greeks had crossed, the majority were still plainly<sup>8</sup> running.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I, II, AND III

309. Learn the following important words which occur in Chapters I, II, and III. Memorize the principal parts

<sup>1</sup> to strip and cross = *having stripped to cross*. <sup>2</sup> πῶς. <sup>3</sup> can we conquer: H. 872: G. 1327: B. 563: Go. 480. <sup>4</sup> μή. <sup>5</sup> what was going on: see 40. <sup>6</sup> run . . . about: the direct command was, *as soon as the enemy wheel about, run*. Remember that the Imperative expresses future time. <sup>7</sup> get across first: πῆραν . . . γίγνομαι. <sup>8</sup> were plainly: φανερός εἶμι.

of the verbs, and, where indicated, notice the difference between the active and middle meanings.

- |                |                 |
|----------------|-----------------|
| 1. ἄνω         | 26. ὁμίχλη      |
| 2. ἄτε         | 27. ὄχθη        |
| 3. ἀτριβής     | 28. οὐρανός     |
| 4. ἀφίημι      | 29. προσμύγνυμι |
| 5. ὑπερβολή    | 30. συμμύγνυμι  |
| 6. ἐμβολή      | 31. πελάζω      |
| 7. ἐκδύω       | 32. πέτρα       |
| 8. ἀποδύω      | 33. πέτρος      |
| 9. δαψιλής     | 34. παρεγγυάω   |
| 10. ἐλέγχω     | 35. πηγή        |
| 11. ἐνεδρεύω   | 36. προσβάλλω   |
| 12. ἐπείκειμαι | 37. πήχυς       |
| 13. εὐχομαι    | 38. σκέλος      |
| 14. θάπτω      | 39. σημαίνω     |
| 15. κλέπτω     | 40. στρέφω      |
| 16. κυλίνδω    | 41. σφαγιάζομαι |
| 17. κυκλώω     | 42. κατασφάττω  |
| 18. κράτος     | 43. τέως        |
| 19. κρέμαμαι   | 44. τηνικαῦτα   |
| 20. λίθος      | 45. τρέχω       |
| 21. λανθάνω    | 46. ἐπιτρέχω    |
| 22. μνημονεύω  | 47. ὑπάγω       |
| 23. νεκρός     | 48. ὑφηγέομαι   |
| 24. εἴσοδος    | 49. ὑφίστημι    |
| 25. ἄφοδος     | 50. χειμών      |

310. Review the following points of syntax :

1. Genitive of source, 16.
2. Construction after verbs of Fearing. [H. 887: G. 1378: B. 594: Go. 610, 611.]

3. Accusative of specification, or Greek Accusative. [H. 718: G. 1058: B. 337: Go. 537.]
4. Construction after *λανθάνω*. [H. 984: G. 1586.] See 169.
5. Case following *πελάζω*. [H. 772: G. 1175: B. 392: Go. 525.]
6. Verbs followed by the Genitive. [H. 742: G. 1102: B. 356: Go. 510, 511.]
7. Result clauses. [H. 927: G. 1450: B. 595, 597: Go. 566, 619.]
8. Construction after verbs of Hindering. [H. 963: G. 1549: B. 643: Go. 572-573.]
9. Potential Optative. [H. 872: G. 1327: B. 563: Go. 480.]
10. Use of participle for a relative clause, 40.

**311.** Let the instructor form several sentences, employing the words in **309** and involving the constructions in **310**. These sentences should be written by the students at sight.

#### BOOK IV—CHAPTER IV

##### **312.** Sec. I-13.

1. Because<sup>1</sup> of the enemy, they proceeded through Armenia.
2. We made a treaty on condition that we should take as much provision as we needed.<sup>2</sup>
3. The snow was so deep<sup>3</sup> that the men were covered.
4. While they were scattered, they saw many fires.

##### **313.** Sec. 14-22.

1. We suffered punishment, because we burned the villages.
2. Whatever things were not<sup>4</sup> facts, he did not report.

<sup>1</sup> Notice carefully the difference between *διὰ* with the Accusative and the Genitive. <sup>2</sup> *take . . . needed* = *take provision as much as we need*. <sup>3</sup> *ἐπελ-τος*. <sup>4</sup> H. 1025, a: G. 1612: B. 600: Go. 646.

3. We asked him who would attack us.<sup>1</sup>
4. We left a garrison and proceeded with the man who had been captured.

## BOOK IV — CHAPTER V

## 314. Sec. I-II.

1. We must seize the pass before they attack us.
2. Many perished, because the north wind blew in their faces.<sup>2</sup>
3. Unless you admit us to the fire, we will not share<sup>3</sup> with you what we have.
4. When they had eaten something, they came to the mayor.

## 315. Sec. 12-20.

1. Whoever did not have<sup>4</sup> something black as a protection, lost their eyes.<sup>5</sup>
2. We requested the sick not to be left behind.
3. On account<sup>6</sup> of the steaming, we thought that the snow would melt.
4. They went along and found out what the hindrance was.

316. Sec. 21-27. σ κ λ δ ε

1. They sent men<sup>7</sup> to find out how the sick were.<sup>8</sup>
2. Xenophon bade them distribute these villages by lot.

<sup>1</sup> *who . . . us*: what was the direct question? To whom does *us* refer?  
<sup>2</sup> *in . . . faces*: ἐναντίος. <sup>3</sup> H. 737: G. 1097: B. 356: Go. 510. <sup>4</sup> *Whoever . . . have* = *those not having*: which negative? <sup>5</sup> *lost . . . eyes* = *were destroyed in respect to the eyes*. <sup>6</sup> *on . . . steaming*: cf. διὰ τὸ ἐκλελοιπέναι, sec. 15 of the text. <sup>7</sup> Omit. <sup>8</sup> What tense in Greek?

3. The husband of the mayor's daughter had gone to hunt hares.
4. They had to<sup>1</sup> go down to their houses on a ladder.

### 317. Sec. 28-36.

1. We will deprive<sup>2</sup> him of his children <sup>from</sup> until he promises to lead us.
2. Whenever Xenophon went by a house, they drank to his health.
3. We asked him what the neighboring<sup>3</sup> country was.
4. Then the mayor taught us how to lead these horses through deep snow.

## BOOK IV — CHAPTER VI

### 318. Sec. 1-9.

1. If you lead us well, we shall hand over to you your son.
2. The boy who was left behind<sup>4</sup> by the mayor was carried home.
3. I will stop advancing in order that we may plan how we shall fight.<sup>5</sup>
4. As soon as they arm themselves, they will not delay.

### 319. Sec. 10-16.

1. We must consider how to seize the mountain without being seen.<sup>6</sup>
2. If the enemy are on both sides,<sup>7</sup> we shall be struck on the head.

<sup>1</sup> *had to*: use *δέω*.    <sup>2</sup> What two constructions follow verbs of depriving? H. 724, 748: G. 1069, 1118: B. 340, 362: Go. 509.    <sup>3</sup> *πλησίον*.    <sup>4</sup> *who . . . behind*: see 40.    <sup>5</sup> *how . . . fight*: H. 885: G. 1372: B. 593: Go. 638, a.    <sup>6</sup> *without being seen*: use the participle of *λανθάνω*.    <sup>7</sup> *on both sides*: *ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν*.

3. I heard that you stole whatever the law did not<sup>1</sup> prohibit.
4. I. also, am clever at stealing.<sup>2</sup>

### 320. Sec. 17-27.

1. If we ever take any part of the mountain, they form ambushades.
2. Why must you make this agreement?<sup>3</sup>
3. The majority<sup>4</sup> joined the others before the enemy fled.
4. We could not render their shields<sup>5</sup> useless by cutting them with our knives.

### REVIEW OF CHAPTERS IV, V, AND VI

321. Learn the following important words which occur in Chapters IV, V, and VI. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs, and, where indicated, notice the difference between the active and middle meanings.

1. ἀγνοέω	11. διαλαγχάνω
2. ἀθρόος	12. διασκηνέω
3. ἀμέλεια	13. διαφέρω
4. ἀπαντάω	14. διάφορος
5. ἄπαξ	15. ἐγκαλύπτω
6. ἄπλετος	16. ἐμπίμπρημι
7. ἀσθενέω	17. ἔνθα
8. βρέχω	18. ἐράω
9. γαμέω	19. εὖζωνος
10. δάκτυλος	20. κάμνω

<sup>1</sup> All negative relative clauses which are protases of condition use μή.

<sup>2</sup> at stealing: H. 952: G. 1526: B. 641: Go. 565, a. <sup>3</sup> σύνθημα. <sup>4</sup> οἱ πολλοί. <sup>5</sup> Not γέρον; wicker shields.



21. κλέπτω	27. κωμάρχης	33. ὀψίζω
22. κλώψ	28. μελετάω	34. ὀψέ
23. κλοπή	29. μετρέω	35. παιδαία
24. κρατήρ	30. νόμος	36. πάλαι
25. κτήνος	31. νόμιμος	37. παλαιός
26. κνέφας	32. ὄκνος	38. παρατίθημι
39. πνέω	45. σφάττω	
40. πνεῦμα	46. τράπεζα	
41. πήγνυμι	47. τρέπω	
42. προπίνω	48. τρέφω	
43. πῶμα	49. ἀνατρέφω	
44. πῦρ	50. ἀποσκεδάννυμι	

**322.** Review the following points of syntax:

1. **διά** with Accusative and Genitive.
2. Case governed by **δέω**.
3. **μή** with the participle. [H. 1025, *a*; G. 1612; B. 653, 6; Go. 582, *c*.]
4. Vivid future condition.
5. Construction used with **μεταδίδωμι**. [H. 737; G. 1097; B. 356; Go. 510.]
6. Constructions used after verbs of Depriving. [H. 724, 748; G. 1069, 1118; B. 340, 362; Go. 509.]
7. **ὅπως** with the Future Indicative. When used? [H. 885; G. 1372; B. 593; Go. 638, *a*.]
8. Adjectives followed by the Infinitive. [H. 952; G. 1526; B. 641; Go. 565, *a*.]
9. Present General Condition.

**323.** Let the instructor form several sentences, employing the words in **321** and involving the constructions in **322**. These sentences should be written by the students at sight.

## BOOK IV — CHAPTER VII

## 324. Sec. 1-8.

1. Immediately, on his arrival,<sup>1</sup> Xenophon said, "What prevents us from taking<sup>2</sup> the place?"
2. Whenever we pass by, our legs are crushed.<sup>3</sup>
3. Should we not<sup>4</sup> suffer, while under fire?<sup>5</sup>
4. It will not be possible to run along one by one.

## 325. Sec. 9-17.

1. The whole army feared that he would be the first to run<sup>6</sup> into the stronghold.
2. He seized him by the hand<sup>7</sup> as he ran by.
3. We shall cut off the heads of whomever we can conquer.
4. Whenever we are going to fight,<sup>8</sup> they follow.

## 326. Sec. 18-27.

1. It is plain that<sup>9</sup> this guide came with us to destroy the country.
2. The shouting of those who were coming up became louder and nearer.
3. We heard the men ahead shouting, "The sea, the sea!"
4. Without the exhortation of any one,<sup>10</sup> the guide himself cuts the shields.

<sup>1</sup> on his arrival = having come.    <sup>2</sup> What . . . taking: see text, sec. 4.  
<sup>3</sup> our . . . crushed = we are crushed in respect to our legs.    <sup>4</sup> H. 1015, b: G. 1604: B. 573.    <sup>5</sup> while under fire = being struck.    <sup>6</sup> be the first to run: use *πρῶτος* in agreement with the subject.    <sup>7</sup> by the hand: H. 738, a: G. 1100: B. 356: Go. 510.    <sup>8</sup> The Future Infinitive very often follows *μᾶλλον*.    <sup>9</sup> When *ὅτι* is used impersonally, it is followed by *ἔστι* and the Indicative or Optative.    <sup>10</sup> without . . . any one = no one exhorting: Genitive absolute.

## BOOK IV — CHAPTER VIII

## 327. Sec. I-10.

1. A man who had been a slave<sup>1</sup> at Athens said, "I should like to ask a question."<sup>2</sup>
2. We have not come to do harm to the king at least.
3. The Macrones said that they would give the Greeks a spear.
4. We must come together and plan how to fight in the best way.

## 328. Sec. 11-19.

1. If we go arranged in this way, the enemy will fall upon our phalanx.
2. There is nothing to hinder<sup>3</sup> us from forming<sup>4</sup> the companies in column.
3. If the companies are on both sides,<sup>5</sup> we shall not be cut off by the enemy.
4. The right wing, which Cleanor led, began to sing the paean.

## 329. Sec. 20-28.

1. As many as eat of the honeycomb will become foolish.<sup>6</sup>
2. When a boy, he once killed a boy by striking him with a dagger.
3. "This hill," he said, "will be a very excellent place for wrestling."
4. The horsemen had to turn back at<sup>7</sup> the sea.

<sup>1</sup> *who . . . slave*: see 40. <sup>2</sup> *ask a question* = *ask something*. <sup>3</sup> *nothing to hinder*: cf. the text, sec. 14. <sup>4</sup> *hinder . . . forming*: H. 961, 1029: G. 1551: B. 643: Go. 572-573. <sup>5</sup> *on both sides*: ἐνθεν καὶ ἐνθεν. <sup>6</sup> *as many . . . foolish*: what kind of a condition? <sup>7</sup> ἐν.

## \* REVIEW OF CHAPTERS VII AND VIII

**330.** Learn the following important words which occur in Chapters VII and VIII. Memorize the principal parts of the verbs, and, where indicated, notice the difference between the active and middle meanings.

- |                |                |
|----------------|----------------|
| 1. ἄλκιμος     | 26. μεθύω      |
| 2. ἀνιάω       | 27. μηχανάομαι |
| 3. ἀνακράζω    | 28. ὀρίζω      |
| 4. ἀνακομίζω   | 29. ὄριον      |
| 5. ἀναλίσκω    | 30. ὄρος       |
| 6. ἀποκάμνω    | 31. παρατρέχω  |
| 7. βῆμα        | 32. περιττεύω  |
| 8. δασύς       | 33. περιττός   |
| 9. παχύς       | 34. περίστημι  |
| 10. πυκνός     | 35. πρόσστημι  |
| 11. δέρμα      | 36. πιέζω      |
| 12. διαλέγομαι | 37. παλαίω     |
| 13. διασπάω    | 38. πάλη       |
| 14. δουλεύω    | 39. πυγμή      |
| 15. ἐνέδρα     | 40. πτέρυξ     |
| 16. ἑταῖρος    | 41. ῥίπτω      |
| 17. ζωγρέω     | 42. σκευή      |
| 18. ἥδη        | 43. σκευός     |
| 19. ἡγεμονία   | 44. συντρίβω   |
| 20. ἡγεμόσυνα  | 45. φθείρω     |
| 21. θέα        | 46. φωνή       |
| 22. θέαμα      | 47. χορεύω     |
| 23. κολωνός    | 48. χρήζω      |
| 24. κυλίνδω    | 49. ὤμός       |
| 25. λήζομαι    | 50. ὤμος       |

**331.** Review the following points of syntax:

1. The Accusative of specification. [H. 718: G. 1058: B. 337: Go. 537.]
2. Direct Questions. [H. 1015: G. 1603, 1604: B. 570-572: Go. 488.]
3. Verbs followed by the Genitive. [H. 738, *a*: G. 1100: B. 356: Go. 510, 511.]
4. Vivid Future Relative Conditions, **114** and **115**.
5. **δηλος εἰμι** used impersonally, **143**.
6. Construction after verbs of Hindering, etc. [H. 963: G. 1549: B. 643: Go. 572-573.]
7. Redundant Negative. [H. 1029: G. 1615: B. 434: Go. 487.]

**332.** Let the instructor form several sentences, employing the words in **330** and involving the constructions in **331**. These sentences should be written by the students at sight.

## PART III

### BOOK I — CHAPTER I

#### 333. Sec. 1-2.

When Darius was sick, the elder of his two sons was with him;<sup>1</sup> but the younger<sup>2</sup> was, by chance,<sup>3</sup> in the province of which Darius had made him satrap. Accordingly the king sent for him, and he marched inland with three hundred heavy armed Greek soldiers.

#### 334. Sec. 3-6.

On the death of Darius,<sup>4</sup> Artaxerxes, his elder son, ascended the throne, and arrested his brother, Cyrus, on the ground that<sup>5</sup> he was plotting against him. Cyrus, however, was begged off by his mother and sent back to his province. There he planned to make war on his brother,<sup>6</sup> and he treated all who were with him<sup>7</sup> in such a way that they were well disposed toward him.<sup>8</sup>

#### 335. Sec. 7-8.

Cyrus secretly<sup>9</sup> plotted against his brother in the following way: He took the fugitives of Miletus under his protec-

<sup>1</sup> *was with him*: παράκειμαι. <sup>2</sup> With what word is this contrasted? The use of μέν and δέ indicates the contrast. <sup>3</sup> *was by chance* = *chanced to be*; see 169. <sup>4</sup> *On . . . Darius* = *when Darius died*. <sup>5</sup> *on the ground that*: ὡς.

<sup>6</sup> Dative. <sup>7</sup> *with him*: παρ' αὐτοῦ. <sup>8</sup> *such . . . him*: see 157 and 158. <sup>9</sup> See 169.

tion, and besieged<sup>1</sup> the city both by land and sea, in order that he might find many pretexts<sup>2</sup> for collecting troops.

**336. Sec. 9-11.**

So<sup>3</sup> the king did not notice that Cyrus was plotting<sup>4</sup> against him, because he thought that he was at war with Tissaphernes, and because he sent to him the taxes that accrued<sup>5</sup> from the cities. Cyrus also gave to Clearchus, who was his guest, ten thousand darics for the support of his soldiers. In this way an army was maintained without attracting attention.<sup>6</sup>

**BOOK I — CHAPTER II**

**337. Sec. 1-4.**

The Greek generals obeyed the call of Cyrus,<sup>7</sup> because he promised that he would not stop until they should arrive<sup>8</sup> among the Pisidians. Therefore they assembled as many soldiers as they could. When Tissaphernes, however, perceived this preparation, he went to the king as quickly as he could in order that he might make preparations in turn.<sup>9</sup>

**338. Sec. 5-9.**

On setting out<sup>10</sup> from Sardis, Cyrus marched to the large city of Celaenae.<sup>11</sup> Whenever the king was in the

<sup>1</sup> took . . . and besieged = *having taken, besieged*. <sup>2</sup> See the text at the end of sec. 7. <sup>3</sup> *So*. <sup>4</sup> *that . . . plotting*: H. 982: G. 1588: B. 661: G. 586. <sup>5</sup> *that accrued*: see 40. — *accrued*: ὑπὸνματ. <sup>6</sup> *without . . . attention*: see 169. <sup>7</sup> *the call of Cyrus* = *Cyrus' calling*. <sup>8</sup> *until . . . arrive*: see 128. <sup>9</sup> *in turn*: what preposition expresses this idea? <sup>10</sup> *On setting out*: do not follow this use of the present participle in English. The Greeks were more accurate in their use of the tenses than the English are. Did he set out before he marched? <sup>11</sup> Do not use the Genitive.

park of this city, he used to hunt wild beasts on horseback.<sup>1</sup> The Marsyas river, which empties into the Maeander, is twenty feet<sup>2</sup> wide.<sup>3</sup> There Xerxes, after his defeat in Greece, was said to have built a palace at the sources of the river.

### 339. Sec. 10-14.

When he was at Cayster-plain, the soldiers kept coming to Cyrus to demand<sup>4</sup> the pay which was due them<sup>5</sup>; but Cyrus was evidently<sup>6</sup> troubled because he had no money to give them. The Cilician queen, however,<sup>7</sup> at that time, gave Cyrus a large amount of money in order that he might pay the army. When Cyrus reached Tyriaeum, he remained ten days.

### 340. Sec. 15-18.

At the request of the Cilician queen,<sup>8</sup> Cyrus reviewed his whole<sup>9</sup> army. As the Greeks were marching past, Cyrus ordered them to advance arms<sup>10</sup>; and when the trumpet sounded, they advanced arms and moved forward on the run toward the barbarians. On this account, the barbarians were greatly alarmed, and Epyaxa herself fled in her carriage.

### 341. Sec. 19-22.

While they were marching through Cappadocia, Cyrus was said to have killed a man. Syennesis, the king of

<sup>1</sup> on horseback = from horse. <sup>2</sup> Genitive of measure. <sup>3</sup> in width. <sup>4</sup> to demand: review the ways of expressing purpose. See 79. <sup>5</sup> which . . . them: this idea is expressed by ἀπό in composition with the verb meaning to demand.

<sup>6</sup> See 143. <sup>7</sup> 64. <sup>8</sup> At . . . queen: use the Genitive absolute. <sup>9</sup> H. 672: G. 979: B. 455. <sup>10</sup> advance arms: προβάλλομαι τὰ ὅπλα.



Cilicia, tried to prevent Cyrus from entering<sup>1</sup> his country by guarding<sup>2</sup> the pass over the mountains. But when a messenger came and said that Menon was already inside of the mountains, the king abandoned the pass, and Cyrus proceeded without hindrance.<sup>3</sup>

**342. Sec. 23-27.**

Some<sup>4</sup> say that these soldiers perished among the mountains at the hands of<sup>5</sup> the Cilicians, while others<sup>4</sup> say that they could not find the road. Afterwards,<sup>6</sup> when Cyrus had entered Tarsus and met Syennesis, he gave him many valuable gifts, while<sup>7</sup> he, on the other hand,<sup>8</sup> gave Cyrus a large sum of money. The Greeks said that they would not take the slaves, if they ever came across any.<sup>9</sup>

**REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I AND II**

**343. Follow the directions given in 182-184.**

The sight work should be connected prose.

**BOOK I — CHAPTER III**

**344. Sec. 1-6.**

Cyrus was compelled to remain here many days,<sup>10</sup> for his soldiers would not go against the king. When Clearchus could not force his soldiers to advance, he addressed them as follows: "Fellow-soldiers, do not wonder<sup>11</sup> that I wish to aid Cyrus for the benefits I have received at his

<sup>1</sup> *from entering*: H. 963: G. 1549: B. 643: Go. 572, 573. <sup>2</sup> *by guarding*: use the participle. <sup>3</sup> *without hindrance* = *no one hindering*. <sup>4</sup> *some ... others*: οἱ μὲν ... οἱ δέ. <sup>5</sup> *at the hands of*: Genitive with ὑπὸ. <sup>6</sup> *After this*. <sup>7</sup> δέ. <sup>8</sup> *on ... hand*: omit. <sup>9</sup> *if ... any*: see 111 and 149. <sup>10</sup> *many days*: what kind of time is expressed? <sup>11</sup> *do ... wonder*: for prohibitions, see 62.

hands.<sup>1</sup> On the other hand, I do not wish to desert you, for I know that, if I should be deprived<sup>2</sup> of you, I should not be able to ward off an enemy."

### 345. Sec. 7-12.

The soldiers commended the decision<sup>3</sup> of Clearchus when he said that he would not desert them. On account of this, Cyrus thought that he had been wronged<sup>4</sup> by the Greeks, and, accordingly, they feared that<sup>5</sup> he would inflict punishment on them. Clearchus told them that Cyrus was a very bitter enemy, as well as<sup>6</sup> a valuable friend.

### 346. Sec. 13-16.

"I propose," said one of the soldiers, "that we sail away,<sup>7</sup> if Cyrus will give us boats. But if not,<sup>8</sup> let us ask him for guides so that we may seize the heights before the Cilicians."<sup>9</sup> After him, Clearchus stood up and said that he knew how to be ruled also,<sup>10</sup> and that he would obey whatever man they chose to be general.<sup>11</sup>

### 347. Sec. 17-21.

The Greeks did not think it best<sup>12</sup> to ask Cyrus for boats,<sup>13</sup> for they would hesitate<sup>14</sup> to embark in the boats which he might give. "We will send messengers," they

<sup>1</sup> for . . . hands: see text, last part of sec. 4. <sup>2</sup> if . . . deprived: H. 969, d: G. 1563, 5: B. 653, 6: Go. 583. <sup>3</sup> γνῶμη. <sup>4</sup> had been wronged: the direct form of the thought was *I have been wronged*. <sup>5</sup> H. 887: G. 1378: B. 594: Go. 610, 611. <sup>6</sup> as well as: τὲ καί. <sup>7</sup> propose . . . away: εἰπον followed by the Infinitive. <sup>8</sup> See 96. <sup>9</sup> seize . . . Cilicians: see 169. <sup>10</sup> καί before the word it emphasizes. <sup>11</sup> would . . . general: what was the direct form of the condition? <sup>12</sup> think it best: δοκέω and Dative. <sup>13</sup> for boats: H. 724: G. 1069: B. 340: Go. 535. <sup>14</sup> Notice the two meanings of δοκέω as given in the vocabulary, and the construction used in each case.

said, "to ask him if this expedition is more dangerous than the former one." Cyrus replied to the delegates that he wished to inflict punishment on Abrocomas, a personal enemy of his, who was<sup>1</sup> at the Euphrates river.

### BOOK I—CHAPTER IV

#### 348. Sec. 1-5.

While Cyrus was staying at Issus, thirty-five ships that he had sent for arrived. From there they march for one day to the pass from Cilicia into Syria.<sup>2</sup> By landing<sup>3</sup> troops inside and outside the walls, Cyrus overpowered the enemy and took the pass. When Abrocomas heard that Cyrus was coming<sup>4</sup> against him, he retreated to the king.

#### 349. Sec. 6-10.

At Myriandus, two generals placed their most valuable<sup>5</sup> goods on a boat, and sailed away. Some<sup>6</sup> expressed the wish that Cyrus would capture them, while<sup>6</sup> others thought that he would not pursue them. Cyrus said to his troops, "I, at least,<sup>7</sup> will not capture their boat, lest some one might say that I rob<sup>8</sup> of their property whoever wishes to go away."

#### 350. Sec. 11-14.

After this episode,<sup>9</sup> Cyrus marched on to the Euphrates river, which was<sup>10</sup> twenty-four plethra wide. When the soldiers heard that the march would be to Babylon, they

<sup>1</sup> *who was*: see 40. <sup>2</sup> *from . . . Syria = of Cilicia and Syria*. <sup>3</sup> *By landing*: H. 969, α: G. 1563, 3: B. 653, 2: Go. 583. <sup>4</sup> *was coming*: see 142. <sup>5</sup> *most valuable*: πλείστου ἄξια. <sup>6</sup> *Some . . . while others*: οἱ μὲν . . . οἱ δέ. <sup>7</sup> *I, at least*: ἔγωγε. <sup>8</sup> H. 724: G. 1069: B. 340: Go. 535. <sup>9</sup> *Omit*. <sup>10</sup> *which was*: do not use a relative clause.

said that they would not go.<sup>1</sup> Cyrus, however, persuaded the greater part of the Greek army to follow, by promising to give to each man a large amount of money until they reached<sup>2</sup> Babylon.

**351. Sec. 15-19.**

Menon wished to persuade his men to cross the river before<sup>3</sup> the rest of the soldiers decided what they would do. "For," said he, "if you begin to cross, Cyrus will honor you above the rest." Cyrus was pleased with Menon and his soldiers,<sup>4</sup> and he said that he would take care<sup>5</sup> that<sup>6</sup> they praise him. It is said that this river receded before Cyrus.

**REVIEW OF CHAPTERS III AND IV**

**352. Follow the directions given in 195-197.**

The sight work should be connected prose.

**BOOK I — CHAPTER V**

**353. Sec. 1-4.**

While they were marching through Arabia, they hunted wild animals of all sorts on horseback. Whenever they gave chase<sup>7</sup> to the wild asses, these ran so much faster<sup>8</sup> than the horses that they could not capture them. After they remained at Corsote for three days, they marched to Pylae, keeping<sup>9</sup> the Euphrates on their right.

<sup>1</sup> *they . . . go*: the Greek expression is *did not say that they would go*.

<sup>2</sup> *until . . . reached*: what was the form of the promise in Cyrus' words? See 128.

<sup>3</sup> *πρίν*: see 128. <sup>4</sup> Do not use the word for *soldier* at all. Express in another way. <sup>5</sup> *take care*: this verb is impersonal in Greek. <sup>6</sup> H. 885: G. 1372: B. 593: Go. 638, a.

<sup>7</sup> *whenever . . . chase*: see 109. <sup>8</sup> *so much faster* = *faster by so much*. <sup>9</sup> *having*.

**354. Sec. 5-8.**

Here the soldiers ate meat, because grain was very scarce. On one occasion,<sup>1</sup> when a narrow place appeared,<sup>2</sup> one could see<sup>3</sup> a sample<sup>4</sup> of Cyrus' discipline. At the command of Cyrus,<sup>5</sup> his noblest attendants stripped off their tunics, jumped into the mud, and helped hasten on the wagons.

**355. Sec. 9-11.**

Cyrus did not delay, except<sup>6</sup> where it was necessary to provide himself with provisions, for he evidently<sup>7</sup> wished to fight the king when he was<sup>8</sup> unprepared. Besides,<sup>9</sup> Cyrus knew that the king's country was weak in the scattered condition of his troops.<sup>10</sup> The soldiers obtained provisions from a city named Charmande by crossing the river on skins.

**356. Sec. 12-17.**

One of Menon's soldiers said that he had been beaten by Clearchus; therefore, on the same<sup>11</sup> day, when Clearchus was riding by,<sup>12</sup> they threw stones at him. When Cyrus learned of the affair, he rode between the two armies, and told the Greeks that, if they engaged in any conflict with one another, they would be<sup>13</sup> cut to pieces by the barbarians.

<sup>1</sup> On . . . occasion: *πότε*. <sup>2</sup> when . . . appeared: Genitive absolute. <sup>3</sup> one could see = it was possible to see. <sup>4</sup> *μέρος, τό*. <sup>5</sup> At . . . Cyrus: Genitive absolute. <sup>6</sup> except where: *ὅπου μή*. <sup>7</sup> See 143. <sup>8</sup> Omit when he was. <sup>9</sup> *ἔτι*. <sup>10</sup> in . . . troops: notice the text at the end of sec. 9. <sup>11</sup> See 46. <sup>12</sup> when . . . by: use participle. <sup>13</sup> if . . . be: Cyrus said, if you engage . . . you will be, etc.

## BOOK I—CHAPTER VI

## 357. Sec. 1-5.

Orontas, a man who had formerly been at war<sup>1</sup> with Cyrus, said to him, "If you give me a thousand horsemen, I will kill these horsemen, and prevent them from<sup>2</sup> carrying the news<sup>3</sup> to the king." But Orontas was planning to go to the king. When Cyrus heard of this, he arrested Orontas.

## 358. Sec. 6-11.

At the trial, Orontas said that he had never been wronged by Cyrus. Cyrus then said, "Did you not<sup>4</sup> revolt to the Mysians after you gave<sup>5</sup> me pledges?" Orontas assented. When Clearchus advised that they put him out of the way as quickly as possible, all the rest assented to this opinion. After this, no one ever saw Orontas either dead or alive.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS V AND VI

## 359. Follow the directions given in 205-207.

The sight work should be connected prose.

## BOOK I—CHAPTER VII

## 360. Sec. 1-5.

After Cyrus had reviewed<sup>6</sup> the whole army, he collected the general and captains of the Greeks, and told them that he led them as allies because he thought<sup>7</sup> that they were

<sup>1</sup> a . . . war : see 40. <sup>2</sup> H. 963 : G. 1549 : B. 643 : Go. 572, 573. <sup>3</sup> carrying the news : express by one verb. <sup>4</sup> Did you not : οὐκοῦν. Like *nonne* in Latin. <sup>5</sup> after you gave : Aorist participle. <sup>6</sup> made a review. <sup>7</sup> because he thought : H. 969, b : G. 1563, 2 : B. 653, 4 : Go. 583.

braver than the barbarians. He showed them into what sort of a contest they were going, and said he would make them the envy of their friends at home, if his enterprise was successful.<sup>1</sup>

**361.** Sec. 6-11.

Gaulites, who happened to be present, said that Cyrus would not be able to fulfill his promises,<sup>2</sup> even if he should remember<sup>3</sup> them. When the Greeks asked Cyrus what they should have,<sup>4</sup> if they conquered, he said that he would give to each man a golden crown. Artagerses was said to be the leader of the king's horsemen.

**362.** Sec. 12-20.

Cyrus thought that the king would not fight on that day, because he learned that many tracks of men, who were retreating, were visible. Ten days before this,<sup>5</sup> Silanus said that the king would not fight within ten days, so Cyrus promised him a large amount of<sup>6</sup> money in case he should prove to speak<sup>7</sup> the truth.

## BOOK I — CHAPTER VIII

**363.** Sec. 1-7.

While all were proceeding rather carelessly, Pategyas rode up at full speed and shouted that the king would immediately attack them with a large army. Thereupon the generals and soldiers armed themselves in all haste,

<sup>1</sup> *if . . . successful*: use the Genitive absolute. See text at end of sec. 4.  
<sup>2</sup> *his promises* = *as many things as he promised*. <sup>3</sup> Notice that the Perfect middle of *μυνησκει* has a present meaning. <sup>4</sup> *what they should have* = *what should be to them*: Dative of possession. <sup>5</sup> *Ten . . . this* = *on the eleventh day from that day*. <sup>6</sup> *large amount of*: *πολλά*. <sup>7</sup> *in . . . truth*: what was the promise in the direct form? — *prove to speak*: Aorist.

and took<sup>1</sup> their positions,<sup>2</sup> each in his appointed place. Clearchus occupied<sup>3</sup> the right wing, near<sup>4</sup> the Euphrates river.

**364. Sec. 8-13.**

In the afternoon, the whole Persian army came into sight. In front of the lines the Greeks saw some chariots that had scythes for the purpose of cutting whomever they came in contact with.<sup>5</sup> Although Clearchus was ordered<sup>6</sup> to lead against the center of the enemy, yet he did not obey, because he feared<sup>7</sup> that he would be cut off from the river.

**365. Sec. 14-21.**

When Cyrus heard from Xenophon<sup>8</sup> what the watchword was,<sup>9</sup> the Greeks sang the pæan, and went against the enemy. But the barbarians were frightened out of their wits, and fled before they suffered any injury. Whenever<sup>10</sup> the chariots were borne through the Greeks, they opened ranks.

**366. Sec. 22-29.**

Cyrus, fearing that the king would surround him and cut his men to pieces, rode against the men in front of the king. There Cyrus received a wound under the eye and was killed. This defeat occurred<sup>11</sup> because Cyrus did not restrain himself,<sup>12</sup> and because Clearchus did not himself lead against the king.

<sup>1</sup> armed . . . and took = having armed . . . took. <sup>2</sup> took their positions: καθίστημι. <sup>3</sup> held. <sup>4</sup> Dative with πρὸς. <sup>5</sup> came . . . with: ἐντυγχάνω. <sup>6</sup> Although . . . ordered: H. 969, e: G. 1563, 6: B. 653, 7: Go. 583. <sup>7</sup> because he feared: participle. <sup>8</sup> Genitive of source. <sup>9</sup> The direct question was *What is*, etc. <sup>10</sup> See 109. <sup>11</sup> γίγνομαι. <sup>12</sup> restrain himself: ἀνέχεσθαι.



## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS VII AND VIII

**367.** Follow the instructions given in **217–219**.  
The sight work should be connected prose.

## BOOK I — CHAPTER IX

**368.** Sec. 1–7.

Cyrus was educated at the king's court, with the sons of the nobles. There, all who were personally acquainted<sup>1</sup> with him agreed that he was the best of all in everything, and that he knew how to<sup>2</sup> rule and obey. While he was satrap of Lydia and Phrygia, everybody had confidence in him, because he never broke his word,<sup>3</sup> if he promised any one anything.

**369.** Sec. 8–15.

Cyrus evidently<sup>4</sup> showed that he would not betray the fugitives of Miletus, therefore very many cities prayed that they might intrust even<sup>5</sup> their lives to him. Now,<sup>6</sup> he always had a large supply of brave men, for wherever<sup>7</sup> Cyrus appeared, very many were willing to incur danger and go on expeditions with him.

**370.** Sec. 16–23.

He regarded it of the utmost importance<sup>8</sup> to take nothing away from those who brought in<sup>9</sup> large revenues from the countries which<sup>10</sup> they ruled. Furthermore,<sup>11</sup>

<sup>1</sup> were . . . acquainted: ἐν πείρᾳ γίγνομαι. <sup>2</sup> knew how to: H. 986: G. 1592, 2: B. 661, n. 3: Go. 588, c. <sup>3</sup> broke his word: ψεύδομαι. <sup>4</sup> See 143. <sup>5</sup> καὶ. What position? <sup>6</sup> δῆ. <sup>7</sup> See 109. <sup>8</sup> regarded . . . importance: περὶ πλείστον ποίω. <sup>9</sup> brought in: ποίω. <sup>10</sup> See 37. <sup>11</sup> ἔτι.

whatever gifts he received he distributed among his friends, and he was a most excellent co-worker with them in whatever they wished to accomplish.

**371.** Sec. 24-31.

I, at least, think<sup>1</sup> that it is remarkable that he looked after his friends so carefully.<sup>2</sup> For this reason he had very many true friends. Even all the nobles who were with him in battle were killed while fighting in his behalf. Such a man, then,<sup>3</sup> was Cyrus the Younger.

BOOK I—CHAPTER X

**372.** Sec. 1-6.

After the battle, the king's soldiers plundered<sup>4</sup> the camp of Cyrus and fell upon the camp of the Greeks, where all who chanced to have arms made a stand. The Greeks, on the other hand,<sup>5</sup> conquered their opponents and went<sup>6</sup> ahead in pursuit.

**373.** Sec. 7-11.

Now<sup>7</sup> Tissaphernes had the worst of it<sup>8</sup> in the first encounter, for the Greeks, under the command of Episthenes,<sup>9</sup> opened up their ranks and shot at him as he was charging through. When the Greeks saw that the king was coming up from the rear, they wheeled about and attacked him.

<sup>1</sup> I . . . think: δοκέω used impersonally and Dative. <sup>2</sup> so . . . carefully: οὕτως. <sup>3</sup> δὲ. <sup>4</sup> plundered . . . and fell = having plundered . . . fell. <sup>5</sup> on . . . hand: ἀλλὰ. <sup>6</sup> εἰς τὸ πρόσθεν. <sup>7</sup> δὲ. <sup>8</sup> had . . . it: see the text at the beginning of sec. 8. <sup>9</sup> under . . . Episthenes: Genitive absolute.

**374. Sec. 12-19.**

The Persians, however, fled in different<sup>1</sup> directions when they saw that the Greeks were advancing. After this encounter, the Greeks halted at the foot of a certain hill, and wondered whether Cyrus was dead or<sup>2</sup> had gone in pursuit. After deliberation, they decided to go to their camp, where they found that everything had been plundered.

**REVIEW OF CHAPTERS IX AND X****375. Follow the directions given in 228-230.**

The sight work should be connected prose.

**BOOK II — CHAPTER I****376. Sec. 1-5.**

The Greeks were grieved when they heard from Procles that Cyrus was dead, and that Ariaeus would go away towards<sup>3</sup> Ionia on the next day. Clearchus said, "Would that Cyrus had not been killed."<sup>4</sup> If he were alive, we would put him on the throne,<sup>5</sup> for victors have the privilege of ruling."<sup>6</sup>

**377. Sec. 6-10.**

After this, the Greeks went ahead and ate the flesh of some<sup>7</sup> oxen, using the arrows of the enemy for fuel.<sup>8</sup> While Clearchus was sacrificing, a herald from the king

<sup>1</sup> *in different directions*: ἄλλοι ἄλλοθεν. <sup>2</sup> πότερον . . . ἤ. <sup>3</sup> ἐπὶ with the Genitive. <sup>4</sup> *Would . . . killed*: express this in two ways. See 72. <sup>5</sup> *If . . . throne*: see 95. <sup>6</sup> *victors . . . ruling*: see the text at the end of sec. 4. <sup>7</sup> This may be omitted or expressed. <sup>8</sup> In apposition with *arrows*. What case?

came and told the Greeks to surrender their arms. Proxenus replied, "Well,<sup>1</sup> if the king has conquered us, let him come and take<sup>2</sup> our arms, or tell us what we shall have, if we obey him."

### 378. Sec. 11-16.

In reply to<sup>3</sup> these words,<sup>4</sup> the herald, whose name was Phalinus,<sup>5</sup> said that the Greeks belonged to the king, because he could lead against them a large number of troops, and that they were foolish, if they thought they could use their valor and conquer the king. Therefore many of the Greeks began to lose<sup>6</sup> courage.

### 379. Sec. 17-23.

Clearchus, wishing that Phalinus would advise them not to surrender their arms, said, "Tell us, Phalinus, what we ought to do." But he replied that they did not have one hope in ten thousand of saving themselves without the consent of the king.<sup>7</sup> Clearchus, however, said that they would not surrender their arms, for they would be more valuable<sup>8</sup> friends with them than without<sup>9</sup> them.

## BOOK II — CHAPTER II

### 380. Sec. 1-6.

Ariaeus urged the Greeks to go back home with him on the next day. After he had sacrificed, Clearchus said

<sup>1</sup> ἀλλά. <sup>2</sup> let . . . take = *having come, let him take*: see 60. <sup>3</sup> In reply to: πρὸς with the Accusative. <sup>4</sup> Omit. <sup>5</sup> whose . . . Phalinus = *Phalinius in respect to name*. <sup>6</sup> began to lose: Imperfect. <sup>7</sup> without . . . king: Genitive absolute. <sup>8</sup> more valuable: πλεονος ἔξιοι. <sup>9</sup> with . . . without = *having them than not having them*: H. 969, d: G. 1563, 5: B. 653: Go. 583. What is the negative in conditions?

to the generals, "The omens are not favorable for us to go to the king, and we cannot remain here, because we have no provisions, therefore we must<sup>1</sup> go immediately to our friends." Henceforth the Greeks obeyed Clearchus.

### 381. Sec. 7-13.

About midnight, Ariaeus and the Greeks came together and took an oath that they would not<sup>2</sup> betray each other. Ariaeus thought that they ought not to go back by the road<sup>3</sup> they came, for fear that<sup>4</sup> they would not have provisions. Therefore they decided to go by a longer route,<sup>5</sup> so that they might not perish from hunger.

### 382. Sec. 14-21.

The Greeks did not wish to attack these horsemen, but they led straight on and arrived at sunset at villages, which had been plundered<sup>6</sup> by the king's army. There the Greeks made such a noise that the enemy actually fled<sup>6</sup> from their tents. Clearchus, however, was afraid that a panic would fall upon the Greeks also<sup>7</sup> within that night.

## REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I AND II

### 383. Follow the instructions given in 240-242.

The sight work should be connected prose.

<sup>1</sup> For the different ways of expressing *must*, see 74. <sup>2</sup> See 141. <sup>3</sup> *by the road; by a longer route*: H. 715, *b*: G. 1057: B. 331: Go. 536. <sup>4</sup> *for fear that*:  $\mu\eta$ . <sup>5</sup> *that . . . plundered*: see 40. <sup>6</sup> *that . . . fled*: for the distinction between  $\omega\rho\tau\epsilon$  with the Indicative and with the Infinitive, see H. 927: G. 1450: B. 595: Go. 566, *b*, 639, *a*. <sup>7</sup>  $\kappa\alpha\iota$ . In what position?

## BOOK II — CHAPTER III

## 384. Sec. 1-9.

At sunrise, some heralds came to the pickets and asked for Clearchus. He replied, "Wait until I am at leisure,<sup>1</sup> and tell them that we shall not talk about a truce unless they furnish breakfast." The messengers said that they would furnish the Greeks with provisions, in case there was a truce. After consultation, the generals decided<sup>2</sup> not to hesitate to make the treaty.

## 385. Sec. 10-16.

As they marched along, they came upon canals, over which they had to build<sup>3</sup> bridges. Clearchus beat those who loitered, in order that he might hurry on the work, for he thought that the king was trying to hinder the Greeks by letting<sup>4</sup> the water into the plain. In the villages, they found dates of such wonderful flavor<sup>5</sup> that the soldiers ate them.

## 386. Sec. 17-22.

Tissaphernes said to the Greeks, through an interpreter, that he would ask the king that they might be carried safely<sup>6</sup> into Greece, "and I think," said he, "that he will grant me this as a favor,<sup>7</sup> because I was the first to report that Cyrus was plotting against him." Clearchus replied that they were ashamed to desert Cyrus, now that they had marched inland<sup>8</sup> with him.

<sup>1</sup> *Wait . . . leisure*: see 128. <sup>2</sup> Use δοκέω impersonally. <sup>3</sup> *had to build*: see 74. <sup>4</sup> *by letting*: participle. <sup>5</sup> *wonderful flavor* = *wonderful because of their flavor*: H. 744, 753: G. 1126, 1140: B. 366: Go. 509, c. <sup>6</sup> *be carried safely*: ἀποσφίλω. <sup>7</sup> *grant as a favor*: χαρίζομαι. <sup>8</sup> *now . . . inland*: participle.

**387. Sec. 23-29.**

The Greeks said that they did not wish to kill the king, but would like<sup>1</sup> to proceed home. On the next day,<sup>2</sup> Tissaphernes came and said, "We will furnish you with provisions, if you will give us pledges; you will have to swear further that you will buy food, whenever we cannot provide a market."

## BOOK II — CHAPTER IV

**388. Sec. 1-6.**

While the Greeks and Ariaeus were encamped near each other, the Greeks were evidently<sup>3</sup> not pleased with the soldiers<sup>4</sup> of Ariaeus. They said to their generals, "Let us not wait here until we perish." Clearchus, however, replied that, if they should go away then, they would have no provisions, nor would they be able to cross the Euphrates.

**389. Sec. 7-14.**

"If the king," said Clearchus, "had desired to destroy us, I do not think that he would have broken his oath." After this, as Tissaphernes led them,<sup>5</sup> the Greeks encamped by themselves, because the barbarians and the Greeks suspected each other. As they passed through the country, they arrived at a canal that was<sup>6</sup> fifteen parasangs long.

<sup>1</sup> θέλω. <sup>2</sup> On . . . day: express in two ways. <sup>3</sup> See 143. <sup>4</sup> Do not use the word στρατιώτης. <sup>5</sup> as . . . them: Genitive absolute. <sup>6</sup> that was: see 40.

**390. Sec. 15-22.**

When Xenophon happened to be in front of the pickets, a man came up and said that Ariaeus bade them send a guard to the bridge, in order that the barbarians might not destroy the bridges and attack them. Then, indeed,<sup>1</sup> the Greeks knew that he had been sent underhandedly,<sup>2</sup> for Tissaphernes could not flee if<sup>3</sup> the bridge was destroyed.

**391. Sec. 23-28.**

When the Greeks learned what sort of<sup>4</sup> country there was between the river and the canal, they were not frightened, for they thought that the barbarians would not wish them to destroy the bridge and remain.

At the river Phyeus the Greeks met the illegitimate brother of the king, who halted<sup>5</sup> his army as the Greeks went by. He was astonished as he saw them.

**REVIEW OF CHAPTERS III AND IV****392. Follow the directions given in 252-254.**

The sight work should be connected prose.

**BOOK II — CHAPTER V****393. Sec. 1-10.**

When they reached the Zapatas river, Clearchus and Tissaphernes had a conference.<sup>6</sup> Clearchus said, "We

<sup>1</sup> *Then, indeed:* ἔνθα δὲ. <sup>2</sup> *sent underhandedly:* ὑπόπτεπτος. <sup>3</sup> Do not use *et*. How else may a condition be expressed? <sup>4</sup> *what sort of:* for the interrogative of quality, see 34. <sup>5</sup> Distinguish between the transitive and intransitive meanings of the different tenses. <sup>6</sup> *had a conference:* εἰς λόγους ἔρχομαι (Dative).



must put a stop to these suspicious feelings before we inflict incurable evils on each other.<sup>1</sup> The Greeks will not violate their oaths, nor will they kill you, Tissaphernes, our greatest benefactor, for we should be foolish if we should do so."

**394.** Sec. 11-17.

"Since you have both Cyrus' domain and the king's troops, who is so foolish as not to desire to become your ally<sup>2</sup>? But we also, Tissaphernes, can help you in many ways. If the Egyptians should trouble you, I think that you could punish<sup>3</sup> them by using us as your allies. This being so,<sup>4</sup> who has persuaded you that we distrust you?"

**395.** Sec. 18-24.

Tissaphernes said in reply that the Greeks did not justly distrust either him or the king; for they could easily destroy the Greeks by seizing<sup>5</sup> the mountains beforehand and burning the crops. He furthermore asserted that he would be foolish if he should perjure himself, for perjury was characteristic of<sup>6</sup> men in difficulty. "Who are the ones," said he, "who<sup>7</sup> are trying to slander me?"

**396.** Sec. 25-33.

Clearchus urged the rest to go to Tissaphernes with him, so that the slanderers might be detected and punished. He evidently<sup>8</sup> suspected that Menon was the one

<sup>1</sup> *on each other*: H. 725, *a*: G. 1073: B. 340: Go. 534, *a*. <sup>2</sup> *who . . . ally?* see 159. <sup>3</sup> *think . . . punish*: if the Infinitive with *ἐν* depends upon *οἱμαί*, the *ἐν* is placed near *οἱμαί*. <sup>4</sup> Genitive absolute; see text, sec. 12.

<sup>5</sup> *by seizing*: participle. <sup>6</sup> *characteristic of*: see text, at beginning of sec. 21.

<sup>7</sup> *the ones who*: see 40. <sup>8</sup> See 143.

who was plotting against the Greeks. Although many of the soldiers did not trust Tissaphernes,<sup>1</sup> nevertheless five generals and twenty captains went with Clearchus. These generals were arrested, and most of the captains were killed.

**397. Sec. 34-42.**

After this, messengers from the king came and demanded of the Greeks<sup>2</sup> their arms, on the ground that they were his.<sup>3</sup> Cleanor said to Ariaeus that he was the basest of men, because he had betrayed the very<sup>4</sup> men to whom he had sworn to be a friend. Xenophon asked Ariaeus<sup>2</sup> for Proxenus and Menon, because they were friendly to both parties.<sup>5</sup>

**BOOK II—CHAPTER VI**

**398. Sec. 1-5.**

Of these generals who were captured and beheaded, Clearchus was the most fond of war. While he was at war with the Thracians, who were plundering the Greeks, he did not obey the order of the Ephors<sup>6</sup> to come back. Accordingly he was condemned to death. After this, he collected an army with the money which Cyrus had given him, and waged war against the Thracians until<sup>7</sup> Cyrus sent for him.

**399. Sec. 6-15.**

I think that the man who spends money on war, when he can choose peace, is very fond of danger. Further-

<sup>1</sup> Although . . . Tissaphernes: Genitive absolute. <sup>2</sup> H. 724: G. 1069: B. 340: Go. 535. <sup>3</sup> on . . . his = as being of himself. <sup>4</sup> αὐτός. <sup>5</sup> Omit. <sup>6</sup> order . . . Ephors = the Ephors ordering him. <sup>7</sup> See 128.

more,<sup>1</sup> Clearchus used to punish his soldiers so severely that they thought that they must obey<sup>2</sup> him. Whenever they were out of danger, his soldiers went over to another general, but when dangers came they repented, for their fear of him<sup>3</sup> made them brave soldiers.

**400. Sec. 16–20.**

Proxenus was a just and honorable man,<sup>4</sup> but he was not a good general,<sup>4</sup> because he could not impress on his troops respect for himself. He thought, as it seemed,<sup>5</sup> that his soldiers would obey him, if he did not praise the disobedient. The soldiers used to fear Clearchus more than they did Proxenus. At his death, Proxenus was about thirty years old.

**401. Sec. 21–30.**

Menon<sup>6</sup> wished to become very rich and powerful. Therefore he thought that he must commit perjury and deceive his friends, in order to carry out<sup>7</sup> his desires.<sup>8</sup> He used to think that it was an easy matter to take the possessions of his friends, because they would be off their guard. He always used to fear those who he thought were rascals. This base man was not beheaded as the rest were, but was tortured to death.

**REVIEW OF CHAPTERS V AND VI**

**402. Follow the instructions given in 264–266.**

The sight work should be connected prose.

<sup>1</sup> αἰ. <sup>2</sup> *must obey*: H. 988–992: G. 1594–1599: B. 663–666: Go. 352–354.

<sup>3</sup> *their . . . him*: use the article and the Infinitive. <sup>4</sup> *just man*; *good general*: show that these two expressions are contrasted. <sup>5</sup> *as it seemed*: see 143.

<sup>6</sup> Notice in the text the use of ὅτι at the beginning of each of the character sketches. <sup>7</sup> *in . . . out*: ἐκ τοῦ and the Infinitive. <sup>8</sup> Do not use a noun.

## BOOK III — CHAPTER I

## 403. Sec. 1-5.

After the death of the generals, the Greeks did not go to sleep, for they thought that, inasmuch as they had no cavalry, no one would be left, if they should prove victorious. Now it happened that Xenophon, the Athenian, was with the army at the invitation of Proxenus.<sup>1</sup> He was a friend of Socrates, the philosopher,<sup>2</sup> who advised him to consult the god at Delphi with reference to the journey.

## 404. Sec. 6-13.

Xenophon decided that he ought to go with Proxenus, so he asked Apollo to what gods he must sacrifice, if he wished to get home safely. When he was introduced to Cyrus, and was on his march inland,<sup>3</sup> he was ashamed to go back, after he had discovered that Cyrus wished to conquer the king. During a thunderstorm, he thought that he saw a vision.

## 405. Sec. 14-20.

For a long time he lay thinking what sort of dream it was; then he called the captains of Proxenus together, and said that he could not sleep when he saw that the Greeks were not making preparations against the king. "For," said he, "if we get into the hands<sup>4</sup> of the king to-day, will he not resort to every means to kill<sup>5</sup> us? I

<sup>1</sup> *at . . . Proxenus*: express this idea by the use of the participle. <sup>2</sup> *φιλόσοφος*. <sup>3</sup> *on . . . inland*: use one word. <sup>4</sup> = *power*. <sup>5</sup> *to kill*: *ἀντὶ* and the Subjunctive or Optative. Which?

fear the truce, because we must get all of our provisions by purchase."

**406. Sec. 21-29.**

"In this struggle," said he, "the gods, in all likelihood, would be on our side; let us therefore show<sup>1</sup> ourselves very brave generals and captains. For my part,<sup>2</sup> I will follow or lead, just as you choose." Apollonides, however, said he talked foolishness. Xenophon said in reply, "Do you<sup>3</sup> not remember<sup>1</sup> that our generals were beaten by the Persians?"

**407. Sec. 30-35.**

The Greeks accordingly took away the captaincy from Apollonides,<sup>4</sup> because they saw that both of his ears had been bored,<sup>5</sup> and because they thought he was a disgrace to all Greece. Then Hieronumos urged Xenophon to tell the others just what he had also told them. Xenophon replied that they at least must never get into the power of the enemy.

**408. Sec. 36-41.**

"You ought not," said he, "to be discouraged, but you ought to be making preparations to meet the enemy, so that the soldiers may imitate you. And in the first place, since nothing can be done without generals, let us appoint generals and captains in place of those who have been lost. Know well that we can not use our soldiers for any pur-

<sup>1</sup> Compare the active and middle meaning of these verbs. <sup>2</sup> *For my part*: these words merely emphasize the *I*. <sup>3</sup> *Do you not*, etc.: H. 1015: G. 1603: B. 570-572: Go. 488. <sup>4</sup> H. 724: G. 1069: B. 340: Go. 535. <sup>5</sup> *both* . . . *bored* = *had been bored in respect to both ears*.

pose,<sup>1</sup> if they are dejected, and think only of what they are to suffer."<sup>2</sup>

409. Sec. 42-47.

Xenophon told the Greeks that he noticed that men who strove to die nobly generally<sup>3</sup> passed their lives in happiness. "Let us, therefore," said he, "since men are the ones who win<sup>4</sup> victories, be brave men ourselves, and urge the others on to bravery." Then Chirisophus praised the words and deeds of Xenophon,<sup>5</sup> and urged them not to delay, but to choose commanders at once. Xenophon was elected in place of Proxenus.

BOOK III — CHAPTER II

410. Sec. 1-6.

After the election<sup>6</sup> of the generals, Chirisophus addressed them as follows: "Although Ariaeus has betrayed us, nevertheless we must not give in, but try not to get into the power of the enemy alive." Cleanor then said, "Would that the gods had punished<sup>7</sup> Tissaphernes before<sup>8</sup> he had done harm to our generals. But since we understand his faithlessness, let us never again be deceived by him."

411. Sec. 7-13.

Then Xenophon arose, splendidly equipped for war, and said that now he hoped that they could punish<sup>9</sup> the enemy. Just<sup>10</sup> then some one sneezed; and the soldiers

<sup>1</sup> for any purpose: τλ. <sup>2</sup> they . . . suffer: future tense. <sup>3</sup> ὡς ἐπὶ τὸ πολὺ. <sup>4</sup> ποιεῖν. <sup>5</sup> the words . . . Xenophon = praised Xenophon for what he said and did. <sup>6</sup> Do not use a noun. <sup>7</sup> Would . . . punished: what kind of a wish is this? See 76. <sup>8</sup> See 128. <sup>9</sup> δίκην ἐπιτιθεῖν. <sup>10</sup> δῆ: post-positive.

vowed to offer sacrifices to Zeus, because they thought this a good omen. After this incident,<sup>1</sup> Xenophon reminded them of the valor of their ancestors, and of how many Persians they killed when Xerxes came against Athens with his countless host.

**412.** Sec. 14-19.

If you formerly dared to go against the Persians for<sup>2</sup> Cyrus, now, surely, you will be more courageous for<sup>2</sup> your own safety. Do not think<sup>3</sup> that you are worse off because you see that Ariaeus and his men are in the ranks of the enemy. Furthermore,<sup>4</sup> you should not be discouraged because you have no cavalry, for when you are on the ground you can hit much better whomever you wish.

**413.** Sec. 20-25.

Xenophon told the Greeks that it was far better to take men and compel them to lead than to use Tissaphernes as a guide, and that all rivers were passable at their sources. "I say," said he, "that the king would give you many guides, if he saw that you were making preparations to settle hereabouts. But if you remain, do not live<sup>5</sup> in abundance or forget the way<sup>6</sup> home."

**414.** Sec. 26-32.

"I think it best," said Xenophon, "to burn up the superfluous baggage and try to conquer the enemy, so that they may be our baggage-carriers. The most important point,<sup>7</sup>

<sup>1</sup> Omit. <sup>2</sup> *πρὸς* with the Genitive. <sup>3</sup> *Do not think*: see 62. <sup>4</sup> *πρὸς δ'* *ἔτι*. <sup>5</sup> *do not live*: see 62. <sup>6</sup> H. 742: G. 1102: B. 356: Go. 511. <sup>7</sup> *The ... point*: τὸ μέγιστον.

however, is for us to be more orderly and obedient than formerly, and to help the commander punish the disobedient. In this way the king will be disappointed, if we allow<sup>1</sup> no one to be a coward."

#### 415. Sec. 33-39.

After all had voted to do what Xenophon had proposed, Xenophon again spoke: "It is plain that the enemy will follow us like cowardly dogs; therefore, let us form the hoplites in a hollow square<sup>2</sup> and appoint commanders for the van,<sup>3</sup> flanks, and rear, so that we should not have to<sup>4</sup> arrange the men in case the enemy should attack us." They decided that Xenophon should guard the rear, for the present.

### REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I AND II

#### 416. Follow the directions given in 281-283.

The sight work should be connected prose.

### BOOK III—CHAPTER III

#### 417. Sec. 1-10.

Before the Greeks burned up the superfluous baggage, they shared with one another what they needed. Then Mithridates came up in the guise of<sup>5</sup> a friend and tried to bribe some of the captains. The result was that<sup>6</sup> the Greeks decided that the war should henceforth be without heralds. As they went along, the Greeks could do no harm to the Persians, because they did not shoot far

<sup>1</sup> ἐπιτρέπω. <sup>2</sup> form . . . square = make a hollow square of the hoplites.

<sup>3</sup> for the van: do not use the Dative. <sup>4</sup> have to: use δεῖν. <sup>5</sup> in . . . of:

ὧς. <sup>6</sup> The result was that: ὥστε.



enough to reach them.<sup>1</sup> Moreover, whenever the Greeks tried to pursue, the Persians shot backwards as they rode.

**418.** Sec. 11-20.

When the Greeks saw that they could not reach the enemy with their missiles or overtake them in pursuit, they thanked<sup>2</sup> the gods, because the Persians had shown them what they needed. It happened that there were some Rhodians in the army who knew how to use the sling and who could shoot twice as far as the Persians. These, therefore, by the use of money,<sup>3</sup> they formed into a company of two hundred slingers. They provided themselves with cavalry also.

BOOK III — CHAPTER IV

**419.** Sec. 1-9.

On the next day, the Greeks saw Mithridates coming with a large force. As was the case<sup>4</sup> in the former attack, he expected to do<sup>5</sup> much damage to the Greeks<sup>6</sup>; but they were more courageous now, because they had both cavalry and slingers. Accordingly, they were victorious, and captured many of the Persians alive. There was in this place a city named Larissa, which was captured in ancient times by the Persians.

**420.** Sec. 10-18.

The city of Mespila<sup>7</sup> also was once besieged by the Persian king, but he could not capture it by either siege or

<sup>1</sup> shoot . . . them : cf. the text at the end of sec. 7. <sup>2</sup> χάριν ἔχω and Dative. <sup>3</sup> by . . . money = by giving money. <sup>4</sup> was the case : omit these three words. <sup>5</sup> expected to do = thought that he would do. <sup>6</sup> H. 725, a : G. 1073 : B. 340 : G. 534, a. <sup>7</sup> Do not use the Genitive.

assault. As the Greeks went on their journey,<sup>1</sup> Tissaphernes came in sight with a large force, but he retreated very quickly, because the Rhodians shot a very long distance and did not miss<sup>2</sup> their man. While the Greeks and Persians were skirmishing, the Greeks captured many bows, which proved useful to the archers.

421. Sec. 19-24.

After these skirmishes, it became evident that the hollow square threw the Greeks into confusion, for, whenever the road was too<sup>3</sup> narrow, or they had to cross a bridge, the hoplites were crowded out of their places.<sup>4</sup> Therefore they formed six companies to help the phalanx whenever the wings were drawn together or separated.

422. Sec. 25-34.

While the Greeks were marching through some<sup>5</sup> hills, the Persian slingers and archers wounded many of them by shooting down from the heights. But after the Greeks got above them, they feared that they would be surrounded, and fled. After this, the Greeks decided not to proceed and fight at the same time,<sup>6</sup> because<sup>7</sup> there were many wounded.

423. Sec. 35-41.

The Greeks decided to break camp and march as far as possible during the night, for the Persians never encamped near the Greeks on account of fear<sup>8</sup> of an attack. On the

<sup>1</sup> *went . . . journey*: use one word. <sup>2</sup> H. 748: G. 1099: B. 356: Go. 510.

<sup>3</sup> Comparative. <sup>4</sup> *of their places*: omit. <sup>5</sup> Omit. <sup>6</sup> *not . . . time = not to proceed still fighting*. <sup>7</sup> H. 971, a: G. 1568. <sup>8</sup> Do not use the noun.

fourth day, however, the barbarians seized in advance<sup>1</sup> the spur of a mountain at the base of which they must pass. Xenophon thought that, if he could get possession of the summit of the mountain, the Persians would not be able to remain.

**424.** Sec. 42-49.

"Well, I will give you your choice," said Chirisophus, "either to go to the summit or to remain with the army." Xenophon chose to go, and took men from the van, and started immediately. When the enemy saw that he had set out, they too began to race to the summit. Xenophon said to his men, "Have courage,<sup>2</sup> for after a little toil we shall reach home safely." The Greeks reached the height before the enemy.<sup>3</sup>

BOOK III — CHAPTER V

**425.** Sec. 1-9.

The Persians then turned and fled. But the Greeks were discouraged when they saw that they had no place from which to take provisions, for the barbarians suddenly began to burn the villages. "I, at least," said Chirisophus, "think we had better burn them also, so that they may stop all<sup>4</sup> the more quickly." While the Greeks were in perplexity because of the depth of the river, a Rhodian came up and said that he would transport them across the river, if they would give him what he needed.<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *in advance*: *πρό* in composition with the verb. <sup>2</sup> *Have courage*: *θάρρα*. <sup>3</sup> *reached . . . enemy*: see 169. <sup>4</sup> *Omit*. <sup>5</sup> *he . . . needed*: what kind of a condition was used in the direct discourse?

**426. Sec. 10-18.**

The Rhodian said that he would build a bridge by using two thousand skins, each one of which would keep two men from sinking.<sup>1</sup> This device, however, seemed impracticable to the generals. Then the Greeks went back toward Babylon, so that the enemy might not know what they intended<sup>2</sup> to do. After questioning the captives, the Greeks decided to cross the Carduchian mountains.

**REVIEW OF CHAPTERS III, IV, AND V****427. Follow the directions given in 295-297.**

The sight work should be connected prose.

**BOOK IV — CHAPTER I****428. Sec. 1-14.**

The Greeks entered the country<sup>3</sup> of the Carduchi as secretly as they could, for they feared that an attack would be made. At first, the Carduchi fled from the villages, but later, a few of them suddenly assembled on the heights and fell upon the Greeks. If, however, at that time there had been more, I think that the majority of the Greeks would have been in danger of being destroyed.

**429. Sec. 15-28.**

Whenever the enemy attacked the rear guard as they were passing along, Xenophon sent along word to the van to wait; but on one occasion<sup>4</sup> the van did not halt. Xeno-

<sup>1</sup> *from sinking*: H. 748, 1029: G. 1117, 1615: B. 434: Go. 487. Also see 161. <sup>2</sup> *had in mind*. <sup>3</sup> *country of*: omit. Use the Accusative with *els*. <sup>4</sup> *on one occasion*: *πὸ τῆς*.

phon therefore went ahead to see what the trouble was, and saw that Chirisophus was hurrying to seize<sup>1</sup> a certain steep road. The enemy, however, captured the pass first. Then a guide, on being questioned, told the Greeks that there was<sup>2</sup> another road, and a height which they must preoccupy.

## BOOK IV — CHAPTER II

### 430. Sec. 1-13.

Many, under the leadership of Callimachus, volunteered to capture this height. Then Xenophon made an attack on the enemy at the visible pass, so that the volunteers, while the enemy were directing their attention to this road, might go around without detection.<sup>3</sup> Afterwards, Xenophon and the volunteers, by a simultaneous attack,<sup>4</sup> captured the pass. Then Xenophon, taking half of the rear guard, followed the guide, and came upon two hills which had been seized by the enemy, one of which he captured by forming the companies in column.

### 431. Sec. 14-28.

The barbarians, however, abandoned the third hill for fear that they would be surrounded. After the Greeks had united, Xenophon told the enemy that he would not burn their houses on condition that<sup>5</sup> they give up the dead. Whenever the barbarians troubled the van or the rear, Xenophon and Chirisophus helped each other. Sometimes<sup>6</sup> the Cretans, too, were very useful.

<sup>1</sup> *to seize* : see 79. <sup>2</sup> Should the Imperfect be used? <sup>3</sup> *without detection* : see 169. <sup>4</sup> *by . . . attack* = *attacking at the same time*. <sup>5</sup> *on . . . that* : H. 999, a : G. 1460 : B. 596 : Go. 567. <sup>6</sup> Cf. *ἦν δὲ καὶ ὄντο*.

## BOOK IV — CHAPTER III

## 432. Sec. I-II.

On reaching<sup>1</sup> the Centrites river, the Greeks encamped very gladly, now that they had endured so many hardships at the hands of the Carduchi. But the Greeks were greatly discouraged, for their situation was as follows: in front were horsemen who would keep them from crossing,<sup>2</sup> while in the rear the Carduchi were on the mountains ready to attack them. At this juncture,<sup>3</sup> two young men came running up and said that they had found a place where they thought it was safe to cross.

## 433. Sec. 12-23.

The young men said that they could cross at this point without wetting their waists. The Greeks, therefore, decided to try this ford. Xenophon then hit upon a plan<sup>4</sup>; by running back along the river and by pretending to cross there, he frightened the enemy so much that<sup>5</sup> they did not prevent Chirisophus with the van from crossing. When they were on the other side, Chirisophus shouted to his soldiers not to pursue.

## 434. Sec. 24-34.

While the camp followers and the baggage train were in the act of<sup>6</sup> crossing, the Carduchi were evidently coming down from the mountains. Xenophon then faced about and charged the Carduchi; but, as soon as they

<sup>1</sup> *On reaching*: should the Present Participle be used? <sup>2</sup> *from crossing*: H. 963; G. 1549; B. 643; Go. 572, 573. <sup>3</sup> *καίρως*. <sup>4</sup> *hit . . . plan = devised something*. Use *μηχανόμαί*. <sup>5</sup> *so much that*: see 157. <sup>6</sup> *in . . . of*: *ἀκμήν*.

turned in flight, he wheeled to the right and crossed with his men as quickly as he could. In this way the Greeks all crossed this river safely, with the exception of a few who were wounded.<sup>1</sup>

### REVIEW OF CHAPTERS I, II, AND III

**435.** Follow the directions given in 309–311.

The sight work should be connected prose.

### BOOK IV — CHAPTER IV

**436.** Sec. I–13.

When the Greeks were marching through western Armenia, its vice-satrap, Tiribazus, came up and said that he would make a treaty with them, if they would not burn his houses. While they were encamping, so much snow fell that it kept warm whomever<sup>2</sup> it fell upon. There Xenophon, by his example,<sup>3</sup> made the soldiers get up<sup>4</sup> and split wood.

**437.** Sec. 14–22.

Democrates was a man who never reported as true whatever was not true. The Greeks, therefore, gave him men and sent him to find out what the fires were. On his return,<sup>5</sup> he said he had not seen any fires, but that he had learned that Tiribazus was preparing to attack them in the defiles of the mountains. As they were passing over

<sup>1</sup> *with . . . wounded*: Genitive absolute. <sup>2</sup> *kept warm whomever* = *was a warm thing to*, etc. <sup>3</sup> What does *example* really mean? <sup>4</sup> *make get up*: compare the transitive and intransitive meanings of ἀνίστημι. <sup>5</sup> *On his return* = *having proceeded*.

the heights, they espied the camp of Tiribazus, and with a charge<sup>1</sup> they captured about twenty horses.

# BOOK IV — CHAPTER V

## 438. Sec. I-II.

The strong north wind and the deep snow destroyed many of the soldiers. There the soldiers did not act friendly toward one another, for those who had a plenty of wood said that they would not let the others come near the fire unless they shared<sup>2</sup> with them their wheat. After this, Chirisophus came upon some water carriers, who told him that the satrap was about a parasang distant.

## 439. Sec. 12-22.

As many as did not wear something black before their eyes, lost them on account of the snow,<sup>3</sup> and their shoes, too, froze on, if they did not unfasten them at night. The sick, however, were of some use, for they helped the rear guard frighten<sup>4</sup> the enemy by shouting as loud as they could. As Xenophon and his men went along, they found that all those in front had halted right in the snow. He tried to make them get up.

## 440. Sec. 23-36.

The underground houses of the Armenians seemed very strange to the Greeks. All sorts of animals were raised in them. Xenophon said to the ruler of the village, "Lead us well until we leave your country, and I will not deprive<sup>5</sup>

<sup>1</sup> *with a charge = having charged.* <sup>2</sup> H. 737: G. 1097, 2: B. 356: Go. 510. <sup>3</sup> *As . . . snow:* see 109. <sup>4</sup> Compare the active and middle meaning of φοβέω. <sup>5</sup> H. 724, 748, a: G. 1069, 1118: B. 340: Go. 535.



you of your children." The soldiers had a good time here, eating and drinking. Because Armenia had a large number of very spirited horses, its tribute to the king consisted of horses.

#### BOOK IV — CHAPTER VI

##### 441. Sec. 1-13.

Under the leadership of the mayor, they marched along at the rate of six parasangs a day until they reached a pass which was held by the enemy. Chirisophus thought it best to charge the enemy immediately after breakfast.<sup>1</sup> Xenophon, however, wished to seize secretly<sup>2</sup> some part of the mountain, for he thought it was easier to go up a steep road at night than to fight on level ground in the daytime.

##### 442. Sec. 14-27.

Now the Spartans practice stealing from early boyhood; therefore Xenophon thought that Chirisophus would be a man capable of<sup>3</sup> seizing the height by stealth. Chirisophus, however, said: "We are not the only ones who know how to steal, for you Athenians are clever thieves."<sup>4</sup> As they usually did, the Greeks called for volunteers and sent them to capture the mountain.

#### REVIEW OF CHAPTERS IV, V, AND VI

##### 443. Follow the directions given in 321-323.

The sight work should be connected prose.

<sup>1</sup> *immediately after breakfast* = *as soon as they had eaten breakfast*. <sup>2</sup> *seize secretly*: κλέπτω. <sup>3</sup> *capable of*: ικανός and Infinitive. <sup>4</sup> *clever thieves* = *clever to steal*.

## BOOK IV — CHAPTER VII

## 444. Sec. 1-14.

When the Greeks arrived among the Taochi, they came upon a stronghold, which they had to take to get provisions. On account of an encircling<sup>1</sup> river, there was only one road, which the enemy protected by rolling down rocks. On consideration, Xenophon hit upon this device:<sup>2</sup> "Let us run forward," said he, "until they begin to roll down stones, and then retreat quickly. In this way we would compel them to use up their rocks, and then we can capture the place." This they did.

## 445. Sec. 15-27.

On leaving Gymnias, the Greeks had a guide who escorted them, not out of good will, but that he might persuade the Greeks to lay waste the land of his enemies. As Xenophon drew near<sup>3</sup> the mountain, he heard a loud shouting, and noticed that the noise became louder and louder as the army advanced. If he had ridden forward, he would have found the van embracing one another, and shouting, "The sea, the sea."

## BOOK IV — CHAPTER VIII

## 446. Sec. 1-13.

The Greeks, through a former Athenian slave, who could talk with the Macronians, told them that they had waged war with the king, and were on their way to

<sup>1</sup> *encircling* = *which was in a circle*. <sup>2</sup> *hit . . . device* = *devising the following*. <sup>3</sup> *drew near*: πλησιάζω (Dative).

Greece. After this, the Macronians were very friendly. In attacking a large mountain among the Colchians, the Greeks did not employ the phalanx, but left a space between the companies. The object was to<sup>1</sup> prevent<sup>2</sup> the enemy from outflanking them.

**447.** Sec. 14-28.

Xenophon encouraged his soldiers as follows: "Men, these are the only ones who prevent us from reaching home.<sup>3</sup> Let us make short work of them."<sup>4</sup> The enemy were defeated, and fled in different directions. After this, the Greeks reached the sea without further hindrance. Here for many days they were busy performing the vows which they had promised, and instituting athletic contests.

**REVIEW OF CHAPTERS VII AND VIII**

**448.** Follow the instructions given in 330-332.

The sight work should be connected prose.

<sup>1</sup> *The . . . to = they did this that.*    <sup>2</sup> See 162.    <sup>3</sup> *that . . . home:* see text, sec. 14.    <sup>4</sup> *make . . . them:* do not translate this literally. What does this expression really mean?

## ENGLISH-GREEK VOCABULARY

The student should consult a Greek-English vocabulary for the forms and fuller meanings of the Greek words here given. Figures in parentheses refer to sections of the book.

### Α

**a, an**, generally omitted, sometimes τῖς (4).

**able**, ἱκανός, δυνατός (160); **be** —, δύναμαι.

**about**, ἀμφί, περί (67).

**above**, ὑπέρ.

**accompany**, ἔπομαι, συνακολουθεῖν.

**accomplish**, ποιέω, καταπράττω.

**accordingly**, οὖν, δῆ (a post-positive).

**account, on** — **of**, διά, ἕνεκα (after its word).

**admiral**, στρατηγός.

**admire**, θαυμάζω.

**advance, make an** —, προεύομαι, πρόσκειμι.

**afraid, be** —, φοβέομαι.

**after**, μετά.

**again**, πάλιν, ἔτι.

**against**, πρὸς, ἐπί.

**aid**, ὠφελέω, βοηθέω, βοηθία.

**all**, πᾶς.

**alone**, μόνος.

**along**, παρά.

**also**, καί, before the word it emphasizes.

**always**, αἰεί.

**among**, ἐν, εἰς.

**and**, καί, δέ (a post-positive).

**angry, be** —, ὀργίζομαι, χαλεπαίνω.

**announce**, ἀγγέλλω, ἀπαγγέλλω.

**another**, ἄλλος.

**any, anybody, any one**, τῖς (34, 2).

**appear**, φαίνομαι.

**applaud**, ἐπαινέω.

**approach**, πλησιάζω; **let** —, προστήμι.

**Ariaeus**, Ἀριαῖος.

**arms, armor**, ὅπλα.

**arm, to** —, ὀπλίζω.

**army**, στρατεύμα, στρατιά, στρατός.

**arrive**, ἀφικνέομαι, πάρεμι.

**arrow**, τόξον.

**Artaxerxes**, Ἀρταξέρξης.

**as**, ὥς.

**ashamed, feel** —, αἰσχύνομαι.

**ask**, — (a question), ἐρωτάω; αἰτέω.

**assistance, give** —, βοηθέω, ὠφελέω.

**at**, ἐν, πρὸς, ἐπί.

**attack**, ἐπιτίθεμαι, ἐμβάλλω, ἔπειμι.

**await**, δέχομαι.

## B

back, πάλιν.  
 bad, κακός.  
 barbarian, βαρβαρικός, βάρβαρος.  
 battle, μάχη; give —, μάχομαι.  
 be, εἰμί; — present, πάρεμι, παρα-  
 γίνομαι.  
 beautiful, καλός.  
 because, ὅτι, ὥς; — of, διά (67).  
 become, γίνομαι.  
 before, πρὶν, πρόσθεν, πρό.  
 begin, ἀρχω.  
 behind, ὀπίσθεν.  
 believe, ἠγέομαι.  
 benefit, ὠφελέω, εὖ ποιεῖν.  
 beside, παρά.  
 betray, προδίδωμι.  
 blame, μέμφομαι.  
 boat, πλοῖον.  
 bow, τόξον; use the —, τοξεύω.  
 bowman, τοξότης.  
 boy, παῖς.  
 brave, ἀγαθός, ἀνδρείος.  
 bravely, καλῶς.  
 bravery, ἀρετή.  
 breadth, εὖρος.  
 bridge, γέφυρα.  
 brother, ἀδελφός.  
 burn, κάω, — up or — down,  
 κατακάω.  
 but, ἀλλά, δέ (a post-positive).  
 buy, ἀγοράζω.  
 by, ὑπο with genitive of agent; ἐπί.

## C

call, καλέω.  
 camp, κατασκηνέω; στρατόπεδον.  
 captain, λοχαγός.  
 capture, αἰρέω, ἀρπάζω; be cap-  
 tured, ἀλίσκομαι (89).  
 care, take —, ἐπιμελέομαι.

carefully, ἐπιμελῶς.  
 catch, λαμβάνω; be caught, ἀλ-  
 σκομαι (89).  
 cavalry, — man, ἵππεύς.  
 cease, παύομαι.  
 certain, a —, τὶς (4).  
 chance, by —, generally use τυγ-  
 χάνω (169).  
 chariot, ἄρμα.  
 choose, αἰρέομαι.  
 Cilicia, Κιλικίᾱ.  
 citizen, πολίτης.  
 city, πόλις.  
 Clearchus, Κλέαρχος.  
 collect, συλλέγω, ἀθροίζω.  
 come, ἔρχομαι, have —, ἔκω.  
 command, κελεύω, ἀρχω.  
 commander, ἀρχων, στρατηγός.  
 congratulate, εὐδαιμονίζω.  
 conquer, νικάω, κρατέω.  
 consider, βουλευομαι, σκέπτομαι.  
 contest, ἀγών.  
 country, χώρα.  
 courage, ἀρετή.  
 coward, κακός.  
 cross, — over, διαβαίνω.  
 Cyrus, Κῦρος.

## D

danger, κίνδυνος.  
 daring, δαρείκος.  
 daughter, θυγάτηρ.  
 day, ἡμέρᾱ.  
 deceive, ψεύδω, ἐξαπατάω.  
 deep, βαθύς.  
 defeat, νικάω; be defeated, ἡττά-  
 ομαι.  
 delay, διατρίβω.  
 deliberate, βουλευομαι.  
 die, ἀποθνήσκω, τελευτάω.  
 discouraged, be —, ἀθυμέω.

disobey, ἀπιστέω.  
distant, be —, ἀπέχω.  
do, ποιέω, πράττω.  
door, θύρᾱ.  
draw, — up, τάττω.  
dread, ὀκνέω.

**E**

each, ἕκαστος.  
either, — . . . or, ἢ . . . ἢ.  
embark, ἐμβαίνω.  
enemy, πολέμιος; the —, οἱ πολέμιοι.  
entire, πᾶς, ἅπᾶς.  
envy, φθονέω.  
escape, ἀποφεύγω; — notice of, λανθάνω (169).  
especially, μάλιστα.  
even, καί (before the word it emphasizes); not —, οὐδέ or μηδέ.  
ever, ποτέ, πώποτε.  
evident, ὀφλός.  
evil, κακός.

**F**

fall, γίγνομαι; — on, ἐμπίπτω.  
father, πατήρ.  
fear, φοβέομαι, δέδοικα; φόβος.  
fellow-soldiers, ἄνδρες στρατιῶται, with or without ὦ.  
fight, μάχομαι, μάχη. [σκέπτομαι.  
find, εὕρισκω; — out, σκοπέω.  
first, πρῶτος; πρῶτον.  
flee, φεύγω.  
follow, ἔπομαι, ἀκολουθεῖω; as follows, proper case of ὅδε (33).  
food, σίτος.  
foolish, ἡλίθιος.  
foot, πούς.  
foot-soldier, πεζός.  
for, γάρ (a post-positive).

fourth, τέταρτος.  
friend, φίλος, ξένος.  
friendly, φίλιος, φίλος.  
frighten, φοβέω; fear, φοβεόμαι.  
from, ἐξ, παρά, ἀπό.  
furnish, πορίζω.

**G**

general, στρατηγός.  
get, γίγνομαι (in the sense of *obtain*), τυγχάνω, — possession, λαμβάνω.  
give, δίδωμι.  
glad, be —, ἡδομαι.  
gladly, ἡδέως.  
go, εἶμι, ἔρχομαι; be gone, οἴχομαι.  
good, ἀγαθός.  
great, μέγας, πολὺς.  
Greek, Ἕλλην; Ἑλληνικός.  
guard, φύλαξ, φυλακή; φυλάττω.  
guide, ἡγεμών.

**H**

happen, τυγχάνω (169), γίγνομαι.  
happy, εὐδαίμων; deem —, εὐδαιμονίζω.  
harm, do —, κακῶς ποιεῖω, βλάπτω.  
have, ἔχω, dative of possessor with εἰμί (26).  
hear, ἀκούω.  
heavy-armed man, ὀπλίτης.  
height, ὕψος; ἄκρον.  
her, oblique cases of αὐτή (51).  
herald, κήρυξ.  
here, ἐνταῦθα, αὐτοῦ, δεῦρο.  
hereupon, ἐκ τούτου, ἐνταῦθα.  
hesitate, ὀκνέω.  
him, oblique cases of αὐτός (45); if reflexive, οὐ (51).  
himself, ἑαυτοῦ (51); αὐτός (46).  
hinder, κωλύω.

his, when not emphatic, use the article (3, 1); otherwise αὐτοῦ, ἐκείνου (51); — own, ἑαυτοῦ (51).

hold, ἔχω.

honor, τιμή; τιμάω; in —, τίμος.

hope, ἐλπίς.

hoplite, ὀπλίτης.

horse, ἵππος.

horseman, ἵππεύς.

house, οἰκία.

how, πῶς, ὅπως (83); — many, πόσοι, ὅποσοι; — large, ὅσος, ὅπόσος.

hundred, ἑκατόν.

## I

I, ἐγώ (44).

if, εἰ, ἔάν, ἥν, ἄν.

immediately, εὐθύς.

in, ἐν, εἰς; — order that, ἵνα, ὥς, ὅπως (80).

inasmuch, see since.

injure, βλάπτω.

instead, — of, ἀντί.

into, εἰς.

## J

journey, ὁδός, πορεία; to make a —, πορεύομαι.

judge, κρίνω.

just, δίκαιος.

justice, δικαιοσύνη.

justly, δικαίως.

## K

kill, ἀποκτείνω; be killed, ἀποθνήσκω.

king, βασιλεύς, be —, βασιλεύω.

know, οἶδα (153), γινώσκω (89).

## L

large, μέγας, πολὺς; how —, ὅπόσος.

laugh, — at, καταγελᾶω.

lead, ἄγω, ἡγέομαι.

leader, ἡγεμών.

learn, πυνθάνομαι, μαθάνω.

least, at —, γέ (a post-positive).

leave, λείπω.

leisure, be at —, σχολάζω.

lest, μή (84).

letter, ἐπιστολή.

long, μακρός, πολὺς.

long, as — as, ἕως (129).

loose, λύω.

love, φιλέω.

## M

make, ποιέω.

man, ἄνθρωπος (ἁνθρωπός), ἀνὴρ (vīr).

manifest, φανερός, δηλός.

many, so —, τοσούτος, τοσούδε.

march, ἐλαύνω, πορεύομαι; πορεύω.

mercenary, ξενικός.

messenger, ἄγγελος.

middle, μέσος; μέσον.

miss, ἁμαρτάνω.

more, μάλλον.

mother, μήτηρ.

much, πολὺς; πολύ.

must, δεῖ, χρή, ἀνάγκη ἐστὶ, and the verbal in τέος (74, 75).

my, ἐμός, sometimes ἐμοῦ οἱ μοῦ; of mine, ἐμός (51).

myself, ἐμαντοῦ; when intensive, αὐτός (51).

## N

near, παρά; πλησίον, ἐγγύς.

necessary, it is —, δεῖ (74).

need, δέομαι.  
 never, ουποτε, μήποτε.  
 night, νύξ.  
 no, no one, nobody, οὐδείς, μη-  
 δείς.  
 not, οὐ, μή; — only . . . but  
 also, καὶ . . . καί.  
 notice, escape — of, λανθάνω  
 (169).  
 now, νῦν; already, ἤδη.

O

obey, πείθομαι.  
 on, ἐπὶ, ἐν; — account of, ἔνεκα,  
 (after its word) διὰ.  
 one, εἷς, τὶς (34, 2); — another,  
 ἀλλήλων.  
 or, ἢ.  
 order, κελεύω; in — that, ἵνα, ὥς,  
 ὅπως (80).  
 other, ἄλλος.  
 ought, χρῆ, δεῖ (74).  
 our, when not emphatic, by the  
 article (3, 1); sometimes by  
 ἡμῶν (51).  
 overcome, κρατέω.

P

palace, βασιλεία.  
 parasang, παρασάγγης.  
 pay, μισθός.  
 paymaster, μισθοδότης.  
 perceive, αἰσθάνομαι.  
 permit, εἰάω.  
 Persian, Πέρσης; Περσικός.  
 persuade, πείθω.  
 pity, οἰκτείρω.  
 place, χωρίον; take —, γίγνομαι.  
 plain, πεδῖον, δῆλος.  
 plan, βουλευω; βουλή.  
 power, in the — of, ἐπί.

praise, ἐπαινέω.  
 present, be —, πάρειμι, παραγί-  
 γνομαι.  
 prevent, κωλύω.  
 proceed, πορεύομαι, ἐξελαύνω.  
 promise, or make a —, ὑπισχνέο-  
 μαι.  
 provisions, τὰ ἐπιτήδεια.  
 pursue, διώκω.

R

read, ἀναγιγνώσκω (89).  
 receive, λαμβάνω, δέχομαι.  
 remain, μένω.  
 remind, μνησκόω.  
 reply, ἀποκρίνομαι.  
 report, ἀπαγγέλλω.  
 restrain, κατέχω.  
 retaliate, ἀντιποιέω.  
 ride, ἐλαύνω.  
 rightly, δικαίως, ὀρθῶς.  
 river, ποταμός.  
 ruler, ἄρχων.  
 run, τρέχω, θέω.

S

sail, set —, πλέω.  
 sailor, ναύτης.  
 same, ὁ αὐτός (46).  
 save, σῶζω.  
 say, λέγω, φημί; said, εἶπον (139).  
 sea, θάλαττα.  
 see, ὁράω; — to, σκοπέω; be seen,  
 φαίνομαι.  
 seem, or — best, δοκέω and da-  
 tive.  
 self, αὐτός (46).  
 send, πέμπω; — for, μεταπέμπο-  
 μαι.  
 senseless, ἄφρων.  
 set, — out or forth, ὀρμάομαι.



seven, *ἐπτά*.  
 shut, — up, *κατακλείω*; — off, *ἀποκλείω*.  
 since, *ἐπεί*, *ἐπειδή*, *ὅποτε* (64).  
 six, *ἕξ*.  
 skillful, *δεινός*.  
 so, *οὕτως*; — as to, — that, *ὥστε* (158).  
 soldier, *στρατιώτης*; light-armed —, *γυμνής*.  
 some, somebody, *τις* (34).  
 sort, what —, *ποῖος*, *οἷος*.  
 speak, *λέγω*.  
 speech, *λόγος*.  
 stadium or stade, *στάδιον*.  
 stay, *μένω*.  
 still, *ἔτι*.  
 stop, *παύω*, *ἀναπαύομαι*.  
 straightway, *εὐθύς*.  
 successfully, *καλῶς*.  
 such, of — a kind, *τοιούτος* (of what precedes), *τοιόσδε* (of what follows).  
 suffer, *πάσχω*; — harm, *κακῶς πάσχω*.  
 swear, *ὀμνῶμι*.

## T

take, *λαμβάνω*; — place, *γίγνομαι*; be taken, *ἀλίσκομαι* (89).  
 talent, *τάλαντον*.  
 taste, *γεύομαι*.  
 tell, *λέγω*.  
 ten, *δέκα*.  
 than, *ἢ*.  
 that, *ὅτι*, *μή* (84); in order —, *ἵνα*, *ὥς*, *ὅπως* (80); so —, *ὥστε* (158); *ἐκεῖνος* (33) (the demonstrative pronoun).  
 the, *ὁ*, *ἡ*, *τό* (1; 3).

their, sometimes by the article (3, 1); also *αὐτῶν*, *ἐκείνων* (51).  
 them, oblique cases of *αὐτός* in plural (45).  
 themselves, reflexive, *ἑαυτῶν* (47); intensive, *αὐτοί* (46); sometimes the middle voice.  
 thence, *ἐντεῦθεν*.  
 there, *ἐνταῦθα*, *ἐκεῖ*.  
 therefore, *οὖν*, *διὰ*, *τοῦτο*.  
 thereupon, *ἐνταῦθα*, *ἐνθα*.  
 they, generally omitted (42), sometimes, *οὗτοι*, *ἐκεῖνοι*.  
 think, *νομίζω*, *οἶμαι*, *δοκέω*.  
 this, *οὗτος*, *ὁδε* (33).  
 thousand, *χίλιοι*.  
 Thracian, *Θρᾷξ*.  
 three, *τρεῖς*.  
 through, *διά* (67).  
 throw, *ρίπτω*, — at, *βάλλω*.  
 thus, *οὕτως*, *ὥδε*.  
 Tissaphernes, *Τισσαφέρνης*.  
 to, *εἰς*, *πρός*, *παρά*, *ἐπί*, *ὡς* (with persons).  
 treaty, make a —, *σπένδομαι*.  
 truce, *σπονδαί*.  
 true, *ἀληθής*.  
 try, *πειράομαι*.  
 twenty, *εἴκοσι*.  
 two, *δύο*.

## U

until, *ἕως*, *μέχρι*, *ἄχρι*, *ἕστε*, *πρίν* (128).  
 urge, *παρακελεύομαι*.  
 use, *χράομαι*.

## V

valor, *ἀρετή*.  
 van, *στόμα*; those in the —, *οἱ ἔμπροσθεν*.

vengeance, take — on, τιμωρό-  
μαι.

very, πάνυ.

village, κώμη.

virtue, ἀρετή.

**W**

wait, περιμένω.

wall, τείχος.

war, πόλεμος; carry on or make  
—, πολεμέω.

well, εὖ.

what, τίς (34), ὅς, ὅστις; — sort,  
ποῖος.

when, ἐπεὶ, ἐπειδὴ, ὅτε.

whenever, ἐπειδὴ, ὁπότε.

where, οὐ, ἐνθα, ὅπη.

which, ὅς.

who, τίς (34), ὅς.

whole, ὅλος.

why, τί.

width, εὖρος.

wife, γυνή.

willing, be —, βούλομαι, ἐθέλω.

wish, βούλομαι, ἐθέλω.

with, σύν, μετά, ἔχων.

within, ἐνδον.

wonder, θαυμάζω.

word, λόγος.

worthy, ἄξιος.

woman, γυνή.

wrong, or be in the —, ἀδικέω.

**X**

Xenophon, Ξενοφῶν.

**Y**

year, ἔτος.

you, σύ (44).

your, often by the article (3, 1),

ὁμέτερος, σοῦ (51).

yourself, reflexive, σεαυτοῦ (51),

intensive, αὐτός (46).

**Z**

Zeus, Ζεύς, G. Διός, D. Δί, A. Δία,

V. Ζεῦ.

SPECIMEN COLLEGE ENTRANCE EXAMINATIONS  
IN GREEK PROSE COMPOSITION

---

AMHERST COLLEGE, 1897

1. Then he put Megaphernes to death, because he was plotting against him. 2. The king, hearing from Tissaphernes of the preparations against him, was very angry. 3. These Ionian cities, which originally belonged to Tissaphernes, having been given him by the king, now belong to Cyrus. 4. Syennesis, the king of Cilicia, wishing to prevent Cyrus from entering his country, seized the pass over the mountains. 5. But a messenger came and told him that Menon had already led his army through the pass, and was marching on through the plain towards Tarsus.

BRYN MAWR COLLEGE, 1897

When the Turks (Τούρκοι) attacked the Greeks in the last war, the latter were once encamped in a small village near the Peneios River. Fearing lest they should be encircled on both sides, the commander-in-chief of the Greek forces ordered the captains to summon their soldiers, in order that he might address them. "Greeks," he said, "let us rather die than be conquered."

## COLUMBIA UNIVERSITY, 1897

## A

When after five days Chirisophus, who had been sent to Athens that he might bring thence provisions for the army, had not yet appeared, the generals would have marched down into the plain, had they not seen the enemy already there in large numbers. They decided therefore to remain upon the heights.

## B

Let us command the soldiers to cross the river, that we may not appear more cowardly than the barbarians.

## CORNELL UNIVERSITY, 1896

Here the Greeks were discouraged. For they saw that there were large rivers which they must pass, and they feared that the king would give them no leaders. But Xenophon said, "the king would gladly send us away, if he should see that we are not wishing to go. We must therefore make preparations to remain here." By such words Xenophon made his soldiers much braver.

*Scholarship Examination*

The Thebans, as it seems, wished to obtain the headship of Greece, and therefore decided to send Pelopidas as ambassador to the Persian king, to set forth the <sup>1</sup>advantages both to him and to them <sup>2</sup>of his becoming their ally. They thought that the fact of their <sup>1</sup>refusal to follow Agesilaus when he took up war against the king would <sup>3</sup>have great weight with him. Besides that, they could claim to

be no longer inferior to the Lacedaemonians, having won the victory at Leuctra. They imagined, therefore, that, if the king should aid them by declaring the autonomy of Messen<sup>é</sup> and thus <sup>4</sup>menacing their enemies, they could obtain supremacy over all Greece.

<sup>1</sup> Translate by a verb.

<sup>2</sup> Translate by a conditional clause.

<sup>3</sup> = *greatly contribute toward persuading him.*

<sup>4</sup> *ἐπιτιμᾶν*.

#### DARTMOUTH COLLEGE, 1897

Presently they hear the soldiers ahead of them on the heights shouting, "The sea! the sea!" and passing the word along. Then they all broke into a run, even the rear guard. And as soon as they reached the summit they fell into one another's arms, weeping for joy.

Xenophon proceeds to tell how the Greeks gave their guide many gifts before dismissing him. After he had pointed out to them a village where they were to find quarters, and the road leading to it, toward evening he took his departure. A few days later they reached Trapezus, where they offered the sacrifice which they had vowed.

#### HARVARD COLLEGE, 1897

Once, when Xerxes was marching into Europe and the Greeks saw <sup>1</sup> many grave <sup>2</sup> dangers before them, they sent an embassy <sup>3</sup> to Crete and asked the Cretans <sup>4</sup> to help them against the Great King. The Cretans immediately dispatched messengers to Delphi to ask the god whether <sup>5</sup> they should gain any advantage if they went to the aid of Greece. And Apollo answered, "You Cretans seem not

to remember that the Greeks have already received many benefits at your hands, for which they feel no gratitude. For your ancestors joined with them in their expedition against Troy, when the wife of Menelaus was carried off<sup>6</sup> by a barbarian. Nevertheless, when your own King Minos was murdered in Sicily, they refused to help you in punishing<sup>7</sup> his murderers.<sup>8</sup>”

When the Cretans heard that, they were so angry at the Greeks that they refused to help them, and took<sup>9</sup> no part in the war with<sup>10</sup> the Persians. — Cf. HEROD. VII, 169.

<sup>1</sup> *saw before them* : use προφαίνομαι.

<sup>2</sup> *great*.

<sup>3</sup> *ambassadors*.

<sup>4</sup> Κρης, Κρητός.

<sup>5</sup> *if it would prove (become) better for them*.

<sup>6</sup> ἀρπάξω.

<sup>7</sup> τιμωρέομαι.

<sup>8</sup> φονεύς.

<sup>9</sup> *have part*, μετέχω.

<sup>10</sup> πρὸς.

LELAND STANFORD JUNIOR UNIVERSITY, 1896

Translate into Greek :

When Cyrus marched against his brother, he took with him ten thousand Greeks and many barbarians. The Greeks conquered easily, but Ariaeus and the barbarians fled. Cyrus himself was killed in the battle, and not long afterwards most of the Greek generals were seized. They were then without generals or guides and in the midst of a hostile country ; but they showed themselves brave men and conquered all their foes.

PRINCETON COLLEGE, 1897

Cyrus and his army remained twenty days in that place. The soldiers were unwilling to proceed, because

they thought he was marching against the king. Clearchus tried to persuade them, telling them that Cyrus had honored him and would honor them, if they would obey. If you do not wish to go, I shall remain with you, that you may know my good will (*εὐνοία*) towards you. Clearchus would not have been a brave man, if he had not spoken to his soldiers. Let him be honored.

VASSAR COLLEGE, 1897

Let us try to return to Hellas as quickly as possible, for I fear, if we remain in this country much longer, we shall forget the way homeward. And it is not the part of brave men to flee from danger, but to prefer to die nobly rather than to live basely.

He said that they ought to burn up all their wagons, if they intended to march quickly; otherwise these would be inconvenient to transport, while they would be in no way helpful in battle.

WELLESLEY COLLEGE, 1897

And Cyrus called together his generals and said: "Xenias and Pasion have left us; but let them clearly understand that they have neither run away, for I know where they have gone; nor have they escaped, for I have triremes so as to take their boat. But I, for my part, will not pursue them, nor shall any one say that I use a man as long as he may be with me, but whenever he wishes to go away I seize him and abuse him and take away his money. But let them go knowing that they are more disloyal toward us than we are toward them. And I have their wives and children under guard (lit. being guarded);

but not even of these shall they be deprived, but they shall receive them back on account of their former loyalty (*ἀπετή*) toward me."

## WILLIAMS COLLEGE, 1897

Translate into Greek the following passage (which is based upon the previous passage [*Anab.* VII, vi, 1-6]):

Since Thibron was in need of generals and captains, he offered to the former (*τοῖς μὲν*) four darics a month, and to the latter (*τοῖς δέ*), two, if they would take-the-field against the army of Tissaphernes. When they learned that Seuthes was not in need of them and would no longer promise them wages, they said that they would gladly withdraw from his country. And so early the next morning the soldiers were collected together at the call of Xenophon (gen. absol.). And they also offered no opposition. And so the whole army of the Greeks hurried-off-with (*συντρέχω*) the messengers (*ἄγγελος*) in order that they might not be deprived (*ἀποστερέω*) of wages.

## YALE COLLEGE, 1897

Translate into Attic Greek:

In the battle the Persians killed Cyrus; and the king, therefore, thinking the victory his, sent heralds to the Greeks to command them to surrender<sup>1</sup> their arms. But the Greeks were indignant at this,<sup>2</sup> and said to the heralds: "If the king thinks he is victorious, let him come and take our arms. But if we should surrender them out of friendship, what will he give us in return? If Cyrus were living, he would already be king in place of<sup>3</sup> his brother; for



whoever defeats the enemy, as we have you, dictates the terms<sup>4</sup> of peace."

Where does that young man live who stands by the door?

<sup>1</sup> παραδίδωμι. <sup>2</sup> Literally, bore this heavily. <sup>3</sup> ἀντί.

<sup>4</sup> Literally, tells on what (condition) there shall be peace.

UNIVERSITY OF CHICAGO, 1897

*Elementary Prose Composition*

Translate into Greek:

- (a) Go and ask Cyrus for a boat, that you may sail back.
- (b) Since it is necessary for you to go with me, do not abandon me.
- (c) Let some one ask the general what he wants.
- (d) The king thought that the enemy would fight on the same day.
- (e) He does not fear that he will not conquer his brother.
- (f) Let the king come himself and take our arms, if he wants them.

*Advanced Prose Composition*

Translate into Greek:

The messengers, when they had heard this, went away and came back quickly; and by this it was evident that the king was somewhere near, or some one else upon whom it had been enjoined to do this; and they said that they seemed to the king to speak what was reasonable, and had come with guides, who, if a truce should be made, would lead them to a place from which they could get provisions.

But he asked them whether there was a truce just for the men who were coming and going, or whether there would be a truce for the rest also. They replied: "For all, until your message be reported to the king."

Now, when they said this, Clearchus sent for them and deliberated; and it seemed best to make the truce quickly, and quietly to go to the provisions and take them.

UNIVERSITY OF PENNSYLVANIA, 1897

Translate: When Cyrus determined to march against his brother, he collected together as large an army as he could and summoned several Greek generals to join him, for he believed the Greeks to be far superior to the Persians in war (*τὰ πολεμικά*). But he did not at first tell them his purpose. So when the Greeks began to suspect at length that they were marching against the king, they refused to go further, and claimed they had not been hired for this. Clearchus, one of the Greek generals, attempted to compel his soldiers to march on; but they not only refused to do so when ordered, but flung stones at him, so that he barely escaped being killed. Later, he called his soldiers to a meeting and, attempting to address them, burst-into-tears, and could-not-speak (was silent) for a long time, so that his men wondered (to see him). At length he said: "Soldiers, Cyrus has been a good friend to me; he has honored me highly when I was an exile from my native land, and I have promised to help him in return. But without you (*ἔρῃμος* and gen.) I can neither help a friend nor punish an enemy."



# A GRAMMAR OF ATTIC AND IONIC GREEK

\$1.50

By FRANK COLE BABBITT, Ph.D. (Harvard), Professor of the Greek Language, Trinity College, Hartford; formerly Fellow of the American School of Classical Studies at Athens

**T**HIS grammar states the essential facts and principles of the Greek language in concise form, with only so much discussion as may reasonably be demanded for a clear understanding of the subject. It therefore meets the wants of secondary schools, and at the same time is sufficient for all ordinary demands of the college course. The book incorporates the results of the more recent philological studies, and includes many departures from conventional presentation.

¶ The body of the book is devoted to Attic Greek, while Ionic forms are given in the footnotes. The subject of indirect discourse is put at the end of syntax, and each principle has been fully stated in its proper place. Tables of syntactical usage for reference are included, thus making it possible for the student to perceive the normal usage at a glance.

¶ In order to simplify the subject, the verbs have been reduced to five classes, yet nothing has been sacrificed in the process. All contract forms are given as they are found in Attic Greek, followed by the uncontracted forms in parentheses. The treatment of cases is thoroughly logical and clear. The true genitive and the ablative genitive are distinguished from each other, and considered separately; likewise, the true dative, the locative dative, and the instrumental dative. In this way much confusion is avoided.

¶ Much of the attractiveness of the book is due to the prominence given to the examples by the use of large type; to the graphic presentation of vowel changes; to the liberal use of headings; and to the untechnical form of statement.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

# ESSENTIALS OF LATIN FOR BEGINNERS

By HENRY C. PEARSON, Horace Mann School,  
Teachers College, New York. Author of Latin Prose  
Composition, Greek Prose Composition

\$0.90

**T**HIS book is designed to prepare pupils in a thorough fashion to read Caesar's Gallic War. It contains seventy lessons, including ten that are devoted exclusively to reading, and six supplementary lessons. The first seventy lessons contain the minimum of what a pupil should know before he is ready to read Latin with any degree of intelligence and satisfaction. The supplementary lessons deal largely with certain principles of syntax that may be taken up or omitted, according to the desire of the teacher.

¶ The vocabularies have been carefully selected, and contain, with very few exceptions, only those words that occur with the greatest frequency in Caesar's Gallic War. About five hundred words are presented in the first seventy lessons. There is a constant comparison of English and Latin usage, but not much knowledge of English grammar on the part of the pupil is taken for granted. The more difficult constructions are first considered from the English point of view.

¶ The topics, such as nouns, adjectives, pronouns, and verbs, are not treated in a piecemeal fashion, but four or five consecutive lessons are devoted to one topic before passing on to another. Sufficient change, however, is introduced to avoid monotony. The work is provided with ample reviews; the regular exercises review the vocabulary and constructions of the preceding lessons, and these are supplemented by review exercises. The last twenty pages are devoted to carefully graded material for reading, composed of selections from Viri Romae and the first twenty chapters of Caesar's Gallic War, Book II., in simplified form.

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

# GREEK DICTIONARIES

## LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON

Compiled by HENRY GEORGE LIDDELL, D.D., and  
ROBERT SCOTT, D.D., assisted by HENRY DRISLER, LL.D.

Imperial Quarto, 1794 pages. Sheep . . . . . \$10.00

¶ The present edition of this great work has been thoroughly revised, and large additions made to it. The editors have been favored with the coöperation of many scholars, and several important articles have been entirely rewritten.

## LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON—Intermediate

Royal Octavo, 910 pages. Cloth, \$3.50; Half Leather, \$4.00

¶ This abridgment will not only meet every need encountered in preparatory schools, but will also satisfy the requirements of most college students.

## LIDDELL AND SCOTT'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON—Abridged

Crown Octavo, 832 pages. Half Leather . . . . . \$1.25

¶ This abridgment is intended chiefly for use by students in secondary and college preparatory schools.

## THAYER'S GREEK-ENGLISH LEXICON OF THE NEW TESTAMENT

Being Grimm's Wilke's Clavis Novi Testamenti. Translated, Revised, and Enlarged by JOSEPH HENRY THAYER, D.D., LL.D. Royal Octavo, 727 pages.

Cloth, \$5.00; Half Leather . . . . . \$6.50

## YONGE'S ENGLISH-GREEK LEXICON

By C. D. YONGE. Edited by HENRY DRISLER, LL.D.

Royal Octavo, 903 pages. Sheep . . . . . \$4.50

## AUTENRIETH'S HOMERIC DICTIONARY

Translated and Edited by ROBERT P. KEEF, Ph.D. New Edition. Revised by ISAAC FLAGG, Ph.D. 12mo, 312 pages. Illustrated. Cloth . . . . . \$1.10

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY

# LATIN DICTIONARIES

## HARPER'S LATIN DICTIONARY

Founded on the translation of Freund's Latin-German Lexicon. Edited by E. A. ANDREWS, LL.D. Revised, Enlarged, and in great part Rewritten by CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D., and CHARLES SHORT, LL.D.  
Royal Octavo, 2030 pages. Sheep, \$6.50; Full Russia, \$10.00

¶ The translation of Dr. Freund's great Latin-German Lexicon, edited by the late Dr. E. A. Andrews, and published in 1850, has been from that time in extensive and satisfactory use throughout England and America. Meanwhile great advances have been made in the science on which lexicography depends. The present work embodies the latest advances in philological study and research, and is in every respect the most complete and satisfactory Latin Dictionary published.

## LEWIS'S LATIN DICTIONARY FOR SCHOOLS

By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.  
Large Octavo, 1200 pages. Cloth, \$4.50; Half Leather, \$5.00

¶ This dictionary is not an abridgment, but an entirely new and independent work, designed to include all of the student's needs, after acquiring the elements of grammar, for the interpretation of the Latin authors commonly read in school.

## LEWIS'S ELEMENTARY LATIN DICTIONARY

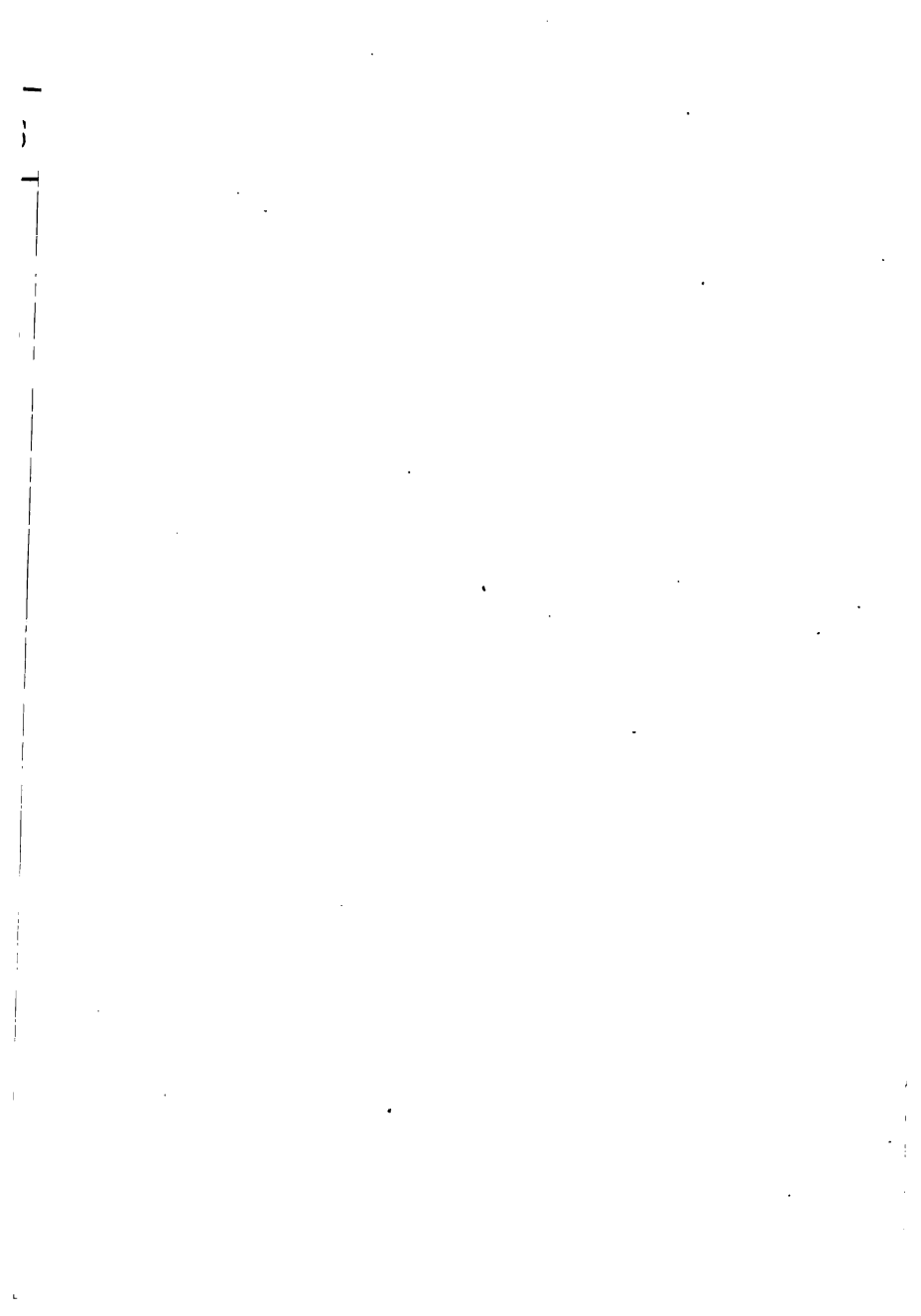
By CHARLTON T. LEWIS, Ph.D.  
Crown Octavo, 952 pages. Half Leather . . . . . \$2.00

¶ This work is sufficiently full to meet the needs of students in secondary or preparatory schools, and also in the first and second years' work in colleges.

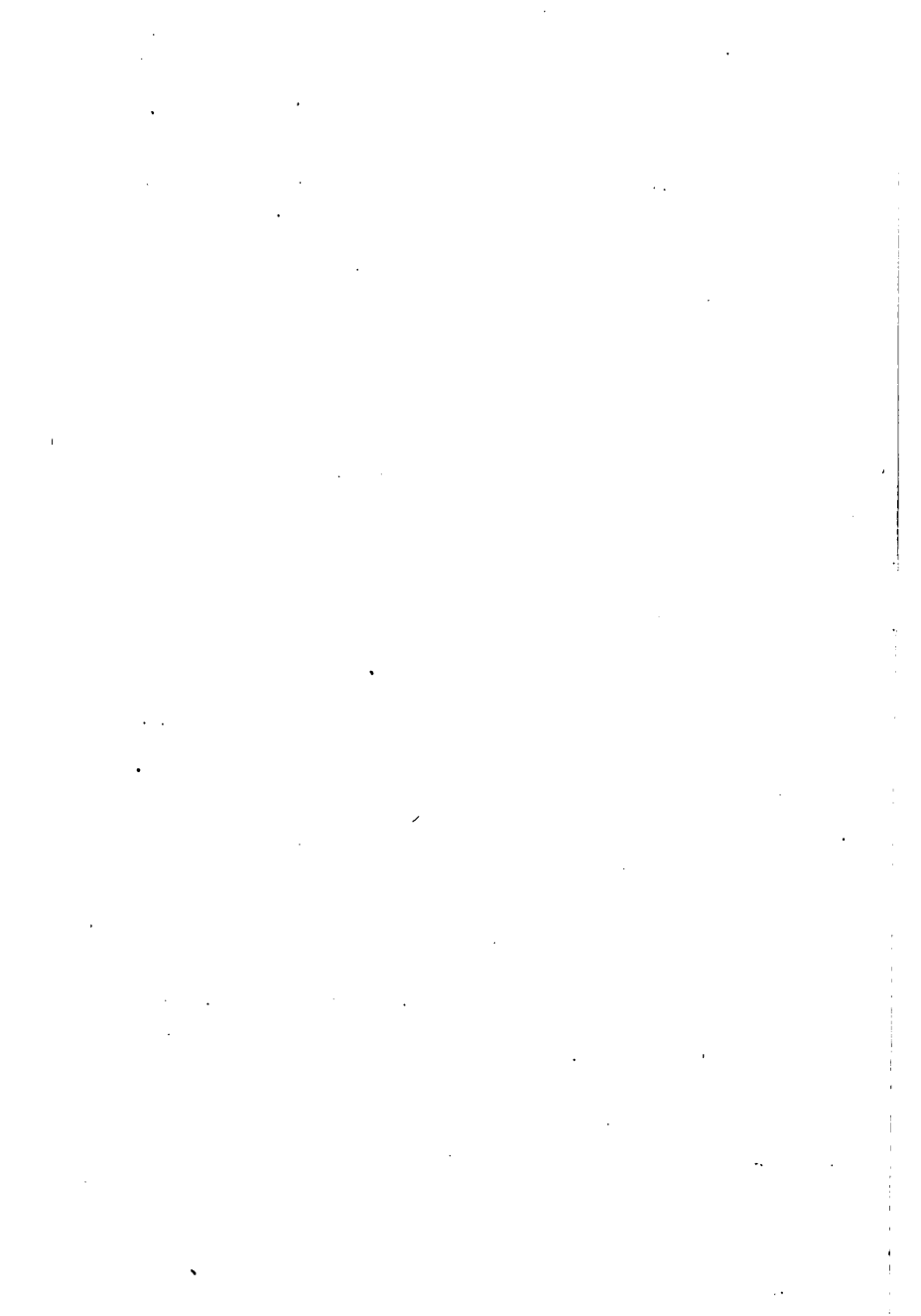
## SMITH'S ENGLISH-LATIN DICTIONARY

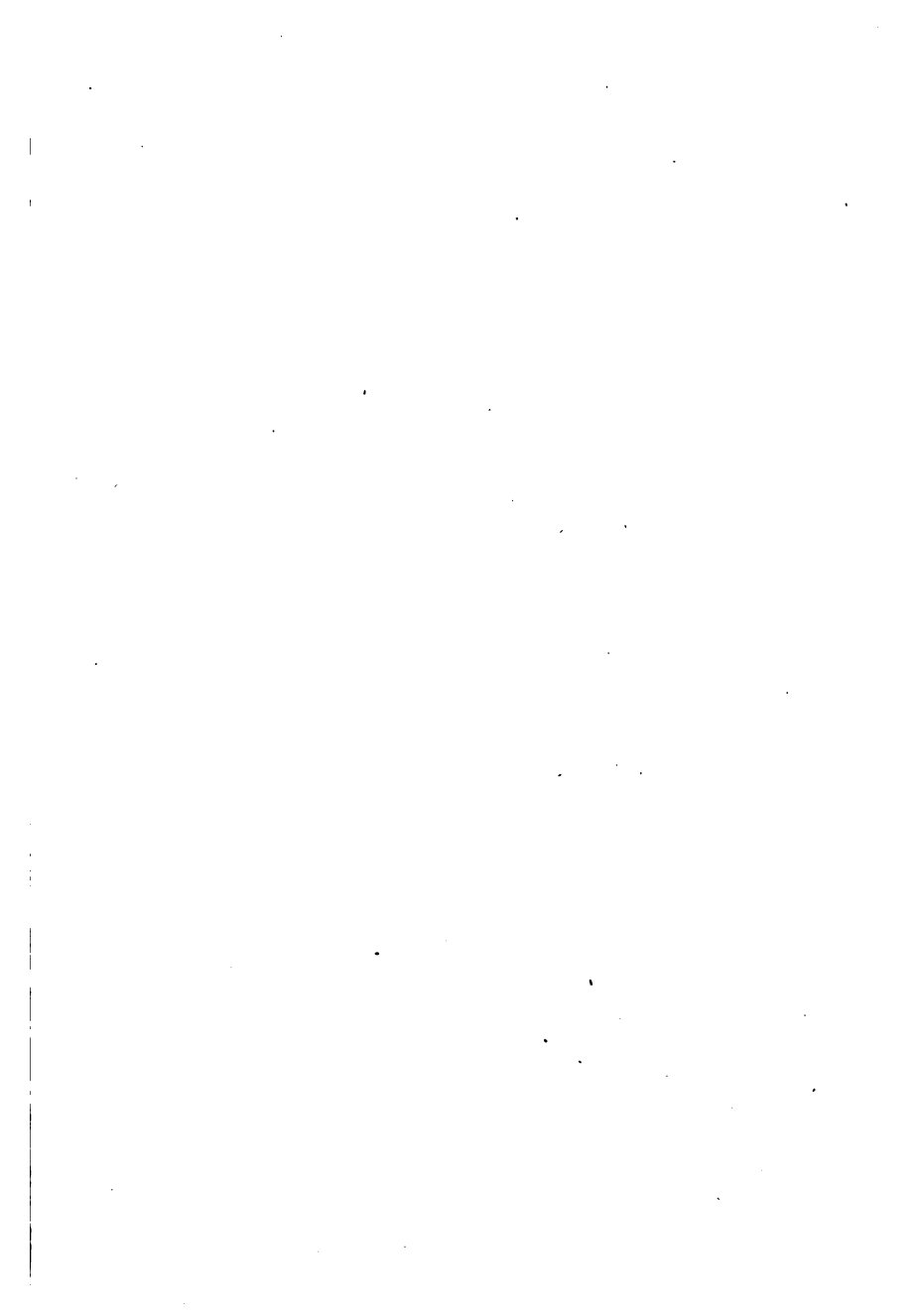
A Complete and Critical English-Latin Dictionary. By WILLIAM SMITH, LL.D., and THEOPHILUS D. HALL, M.A., Fellow of University College, London. With a Dictionary of Proper Names.  
Royal Octavo, 765 pages. Sheep . . . . . \$4.00

AMERICAN BOOK COMPANY











Grafton Wilson

Moses Brown School

Providence

R. I.

Grafton Wilson

Moses Brown School

Providence

R. I.

Grafton Wilson

Moses Brown School

Providence

R. I.

